DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 034 975 AL 002 224

TITLE	Japanese 12-Week Course. Volume II, Lessons 16-27. Volume III, Lessons 28-41.
INSTITUTION	Florida State Univ., Tallahassee. Educational Systems Development Center.
PUB DATE	Nov 65
NOTE	521p.; 2vols.
EDRS PRICE	EDRS Price MF-$2.00 HC-$26.15
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods, Cultural Context, Grammar, *Instructional Materials, *Intensive Language Courses, *Japanese, *Language Instruction, Military Training, Pattern Drills (Language), Romanization

ABSTRACT

These two volumes contain Lesson Units 16-41 in the Defense Language Institute's 12-week course in Japanese. (See AL 002 223 for Volume I, Lessons Units 1-15 and AL 002 225 for Volume IV, Lesson Units 42-55 and Volume V, Glossary.) (AMM)

ED0 34975

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

WEST COAST BRANCH

PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

РУССКИЙ
СРПСКОХРВАТСКИ
華 語
SHQIP
MAGYAR
日 本 語
TÜRKÇE
PORTUGUÊS
فارسی
ROMÂNĂ
УКРАЇНСЬКА
ITALIANO
BAHASA INDONESIA

БЪЛГАРСКИ
POLSKI
粵 語
ČESKY
ΕΛΛΗΝΙΚΑ
한 국 어
ESPAÑOL
FRANÇAIS
العربية
ภาษาไทย
မြန်မာ ဘာသာ စကား
DEUTSCH
TIẾNG VIỆT NAM

KISWAHILI

JAPANESE

12-WEEK COURSE

VOLUME II
LESSONS 16-27

U.S. ARMY

AL 002 224

ED034975

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS
~~COPYRIGHTED~~ MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED
BY Major Bobby L. Moore
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING
UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE OF
EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE
THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF
THE ~~COPYRIGHT~~ OWNER."

JAPANESE

12-Week Course

Volume II

Lessons 16-27

March 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
West Coast Branch
Presidio of Monterey, California

C O N T E N T S

Lesson	Situation	Page
16	Infantry Weapons	1
17	Infantry Weapons, Continued	17
18	Clothing	36
19	Basic Training	65
20	Inspection	87
21	March and Bivouac	112
22	Recreation	134
23	Tanks	158
24	Artillery	180
25	Days of the Week	197
26	Month and Seasons of the Year	213
27	Weekends	232

Lesson 16

A. Perception Drill.

1.	a.	Kono kata wa Yamada-san desu ka.	Is this Mr. Yamada?
	b.	Hai, kono kata wa Yamada-san desu.	Yes, this is Mr. Yamada.
	c.	Iie, kono kata wa Yamada-san ja arimasen.	No, this is not Mr. Yamada.
	d.	Anata wa Tanaka-san desu ne.	You are Mr. Tanaka, aren't you?
	e.	Hai, Tanaka desu.	Yes, I'm Tanaka.
	f.	Tanaka-san ja arimasen ka.	If it isn't Mr. Tanaka. or You are Mr. Tanaka, aren't you?
	g.	Hai, Tanaka desu.	Yes, I'm Tanaka.
2.		kudasaimasu	give me (v.t.)
		kudasai	give me (request)
	a.	Tabako o kudasai.	Please give me a cigarette.
	b.	Okane o kudasai.	Please give me some money.
	c.	Ohairi-kudasai.	Please come in. or Please go in.
	d.	Okake-kudasai.	Please sit down.
		doozo	please
	e.	Doozo otsukai-kudasai.	Please use it.
	f.	Doozo otóri-kudasai.	Please take it.

Lesson 16

A. Perception Drill, continued.

3.		yoo	business, matter to be attended to
		goyoo	honorific (exalted) equivalent of yoo
		yooji	business, matter to be attended to
		betsu ni	in particular, separately
	a.	Nani ka goyoo desu ka.	What can I do for you? (Lit: Are you some business?)
	b.	Betsu ni yooji wa arimasen.	I don't have anything in particular. (Lit: I don't have any special (separate) business.)
4.		komban	tonight, this evening
		komban wa	good evening
		isogashii	busy (I-adj)
		oisogashii	honorific (exalted) equivalent of isogashii
		hima	free time, leisure, not busy
		ohima	honorific (exalted) equivalent of hima
	a.	Komban wa oisogashii desu ka.	Are you busy tonight?
	b.	Iie, hima desu.	No, I'm free.

Lesson 16

A. Perception Drill, continued.

5.	irasshaimasu	exalted honorific equivalent of imasu, exalted honorific equivalentof kimasu, exalted honorific equivalent of ikimasu
a.	Tanaka-san wa doko ni irasshaimasu ka.	Where is Mr. Tanaka? or Where is Mr. Tanaka going?
b.	Tokyo ni irasshaimasu.	He is in Tokyo. or He is going to Tokyo.
c.	Doko kara irasshaimashita ka.	Where did he come from?
d.	Yokohama kara irasshaimashita.	He came from Yokohama.
e.	Yoku irasshaimashita.	I'm glad you came.
6.	iimasu	say (v.t.)
	to	particle used to denote what's said or called
	--- to iimasu	--- is called
a.	Watakushi wa Tanaka to iimasu.	My name is Tanaka. or I'm called Tanaka.
b.	Kono pen wa nan to iimasu ka.	What's the name of this pen? or What is this pen called?
c.	Paakaa to iimasu.	It's called 'Parker'.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

d.	Infantry wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.	How do you say 'infantry' in Japanese?
e.	Hohei to iimasu.	It's HOHEI.
7.	buki	weapon
	kaki	firearm, weapon
	shookaki	small arms
	jidoo-kaki	automatic weapon
	han-jidoo-kaki	semiautomatic weapon
	jidoo-shiki	automatic
	han-jidoo-shiki	semiautomatic
	jidoo-shoojuu	automatic rifle
	kaabin	carbine
	pisutoru	pistol
	kenjuu	pistol
a.	Chuutai ni wa donna shookaki ga arimasu ka.	What small arms does a company have?
b.	Shoojuu ya, kaabin ya pisutoru ga arimasu.	It has rifles, carbines and pistols among others.
8.	kookei	caliber, calibers
a.	Kore wa kookei sanjuu no shoojuu desu.	This is a caliber 30 rifle.
b.	Kono shoojuu wa sanjuu kookei desu.	This rifle is 30 calibers long.

Lesson 16

B. Dialogue.

Infantry Weapons

1. A: Komban wa.

   B: Komban wa. Tanaka-san ja arimasen ka. Yoku irasshaimashita. Doozo ohairi-kudasai.

2. A: Arigatoo gozaimasu.

   B: Saa, doozo okake-kudasai. Nanika goyoo desu ka.

3. A: Betsui ni yooji wa arimasen ga, komban oisogashii desu ka.

   B: Iie, komban wa hima desu.

4. A: Soo desu ka. Sore dewa, hohei no shookaki ni tsuite hanashite kudasai.

   B: Soo desu ne. Mazu shoojuu ga arimasu. Sore kara, kaabin. Kaabin wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.

5. A: Nihongo de mo kaabin to iimasu. Kaabin ya shoojuu wa jidoo-kaki desu ka.

   B: Jidoo-shoojuu mo jidoo-kaabin mo arimasu ga, han-jidoo-shiki no ga ookute, jidoo-shiki no wa sukunai desu.

6. A: Sono hoka donna kaki ga arimasu ka.

   B: Pisutoru ga arimasu. Pisutoru wa kenjuu to mo iimasu ne.

7. A: Soo desu. Kenjuu no kookei wa nan desu ka.

   B: Taitei, kookei yonjuu go desu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Shoojuu-chuutai ni wa shoojuu ga dono gurai arimasu ka.

B: Hyaku gojuu gurai arimasu.

9. A: Kaabin wa.

B: Kaabin wa too mo arimasen.

10. A: Kaabin ga sukunai desu ne.

B: Hai, sukunai desu.

11. A: Tanaka-san, tabako wa ikaga desu ka.

B: Ee, arigatoo. Ja, ip-pon kudasai.

Lesson 16

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Good evening.

   B: Good evening. If it isn't Mr. Tanaka. I'm glad you came. Please come in.

2. A: Thank you.

   B: Oh, please sit down. What can I do for you?

3. A: I don't have anything in particular, but are you busy this evening?

   B: No, I'm free tonight.

4. A: I see. Then, will you tell me about infantry small arms?

   B: Let me see. First of all, there are rifles. And then, carbines. How do you say carbine in Japanese?

5. A: It's called carbine in Japanese, too. Are carbines and rifles automatic weapons?

   B: There are both automatic rifles and automatic carbines, but there are many semiautomatic ones and few automatic ones.

6. A: What other firearms are there?

   B: There are pistols. PISUTORU is also called KENJUU, isn't it?

7. A: That's right. What's the caliber of a pistol?

   B: Usually, caliber 45.

8. A: About how many rifles does a rifle company have?

   B: About 150.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: How about carbines?

   B: Not even 10 carbines.

10. A: It doesn't have many carbines, does it?

    B: No, it doesn't.

11. A: Mr. Tanaka, how about a cigarette?

    B: Yes, thank you. Then please give me one.

D. Grammar Notes.

1. --- ja arimasen ka.

Ja arimasen as the negative of desu was introduced in previous lessons, e.g.,

Anata wa sensei desu ka.
'Are you an instructor?'
Iie, sensei ja arimasen.
'No, I'm not an instructor.'

Anata wa sensei ja arimasen ka.
'Aren't you an instructor?'
Hai, sensei ja arimasen.
'No, I'm not an instructor.'

However, the expression ja arimasen ka is also used in stating rhetorical questions, especially when the speaker is surprised at what he sees or when he wants to speak in an emphasizing style, e.g.,

Tanaka-san ja arimasen ka.
'If it isn't Mr. Tanaka.'
or
You are Mr. Tanaka, aren't you?
Pisutoru ja arimasen ka.
'My goodness, it's a pistoru.'
or
It's a pistoru, isn't it?

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Yasui ja arimasen ka.

'It's cheap, isn't it?'

Ii ja arimasen ka.

'It's good, isn't it?'

Compare the above two examples with the following:

Yasui desu ne.

'It's cheap, isn't it?'

Yasuku wa arimasen.

'It's not cheap.'

Iie desu ne.

'It's good, isn't it?'

Yoku wa arimasen.

'It's not good.'

2. kudasai.

Kudasai is the imperative form of the polite word kudasaimasu, meaning '(someone) gives me', e.g.,

Tabako o hito-hako kudasai.

'Please give me a pack of cigarettes.'

Sensei ga kono hon o kudasaimashita.

'My teacher gave me this book.'

Thus, when one requests goods, he names what he wants, follows it with the particle o and uses the verb

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

kudasai.

Kudasai is also used to express polite requests for actions or services. There are two ways to use kudasai for this purpose. One pattern is constructed as follows: the prefix o plus the masu form of a verb without -masu plus kudasai

Examples:

masu form		polite request for services	
kakemasu	'sit down'	okake-kudasai	'please sit down'
hairimasu	'come in'	ohairi-kudasai	'please come in'
torimasu	'take'	otori-kudasai	'please take'
tsukaimasu	'use'	otsukai-kusadai	'please use'
hanashimasu	'speak, talk, tell'	ohanashi-kudasai	'please talk'

Such verbs as kimasu, shimasu, and mimasu which have honorific equivalents do not occur in the above pattern, e.g.,

masu form		polite request for services	
kimasu	'come'	oide-kudasai	'please come'
		or	
		irasshatte kudasai	'please come'

Lesson 16

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

shimasu	'do'	shite kudasai	'please do'
		or	
		nasatte kudasai	'please do'
		or	
		nasutte kudasai	'please do'
mimasu	'see, look at'	goran kudasai	'please see, please look at'
		or	
		mite kudasai	'please see, please look at'

An example of the other pattern is as follows:

masu form	polite request for services
hanashimasu 'speak, talk, tell'	hanashite kudasai 'please talk, please tell'

The above pattern will be described more in detail later.

The word kudasai has the notion of 'please' in it. However, the word doozo 'please' may precede kudasai expressions to make them more polite, e.g.,

Doozo tabako o hito-hako kudasai.

'Please give me a pack of cigarettes.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Doozo ohairi-kudasai.

'Please come in.'

Doozo hanashite kudasai.

'Please tell me.'

3. --- to iimasu.

To is also used as a formal quoting particle. Following a quotation consisting of any utterance whatsoever, to denotes what is said or called.

Iimasu means 'say'.

For the construction 'one calls (A) (B)', the pattern hito wa (A) o (B) to iimasu is used. However, if everybody calls (A) (B), it isn't necessary in Japanese to to mention the subject hito wa. That is, the sentence can be reduced to (A) o (B) to iimasu. Furthermore, the direct object (A) o can be changed to a notional subject (A) wa. Thus the sentence can be changed to (A) wa (B) to iimasu. The literal translation of this sentence is 'one calls (A) (B)'. But its free equivalent is '(A) is (called) (B)'.

Examples:

Watakushi wa Tanaka to iimasu.

'I'm (called) Tanaka.'

or

'My name is Tanaka.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kenjuu wa Eigo de 'pistol' to iimasu.
'KENJUU is (called) "pistol" in English.'

Tanaka-san wa nan to iimashita ka.
'What did Mr. Tanaka say?'

Ohayoo to iimashita.
He said, "Good morning."

4. kookei

Kookei means 'caliber' or 'calibers'.

When kookei occurs in front of a numeral, it means 'caliber', e.g.,

kookei 30 ----- 'caliber 30'

When it follows a numeral, it indicates the length of the bore of a weapon, e.g.,

30 kookei ----- '30 calibers long'

Lesson 16

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Answer each of the following questions:

   a. Anata no namae wa nan to iimasu ka.

   b. Shookaki wa Eigo de nan to iimasu ka.

   c. 'Caliber' wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.

   d. Anata no jidoosha wa nan to iimasu ka.

   e. Sensei no namae wa nan desu ka.

2. Tell your friend what each of the following items is called in complete sentences:

   a. your pen

   b. your watch

   c. your cigarette

   d. your company

   e. your school

3. Change each of the following -masu sentences to the corresponding kudasai form meaning 'please do ---':

   a. Kono heya ni hairimasu.

   b. Uchi e kaerimasu.

   c. Hon o tojimasu.

   d. Mado o shimemasu.

   e. Namae o kakimasu.

   f. Kono pen o tsukaimasu.

4. Politely request your friend:

   a. to take a cigarette.

   b. to pick up a caliber 45 pistol.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

c. to draw a picture of an automatic rifle.

d. to use your pencil.

e. to open the windows.

f. to tell you about small arms.

g. to come to your office.

5. Someone has just come to your home. You tell him politely:

a. that you are glad he came.

b. to come in.

c. to sit down.

d. that you are free.

e. that you have no particular thing to do.

6. You've just arrived at your friend's home, and:

a. you ask him if he is busy.

b. you offer him a cigarette.

c. you ask him to tell you about automatic weapons.

d. you thank him for what he did.

Lesson 17

A. Perception Drill.

1.	kojin	individual, personal
	kojinyoo	individual use
	kojinyoo-buki	individual weapons
	teryuudan or shuryuudan	hand grenade
	juuken	bayonet
a.	Kojinyoo-buki ni wa nani ga arimasu ka.	What individual weapons are there?
b.	Teryuudan ya juuken nado ga arimasu.	There are hand grenades and bayonets among others.
2.	kumi	group of people, class, crew
	kumiatsukai no	crew-served
	kumiatsukai-kaki	crew-served weapons
	kikanjuu	machine gun
	rokettodan-hasshatoo	rocket launcher
	hakugekihoo	mortar
	muhandoohoo	recoilless rifle
	ryuudampoo	howitzer
a.	Kumiatsukai-kaki ni wa nani ga arimasu ka.	What crew-served weapons are there?
b.	Kikanjuu ya hakugekihoo nado ga arimasu.	There are machine guns and mortars among others.
3.	taihen	very
	omoi	heavy (I-adj)
	karui	light (I-adj)

Lesson 17

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		miri	millimeter
	a.	Shoojuu wa karui desu.	A rifle is light.
	b.	Ryuudampoo wa taihen omoi desu.	A howitzer is very heavy.
	c.	Muhandoohoo no kookei wa hyaku roku miri desu.	The caliber of a recoilless rifle is 106 millimeters.
4.		nai	informal equivalent of arimasen 'is not (located)' (I-adj)
	a.	Soko ni nani ga arimasu ka.	What's there?
	b.	Nanni mo arimasen.	Nothing is there. (formal)
	c.	Nanni mo nai.	Nothing is there. (informal)
	d.	Nanni mo nai desu.	Nothing is there. (formal)
	e.	Omoi desu ka.	Is it heavy?
	f.	Omoku wa arimasen.	It's not heavy. (formal)
	g.	Omoku wa nai.	It's not heavy. (informal)
	h.	Omoku wa nai desu.	It's not heavy. (formal)
5.		soobi or soobihin	equipment
		hifuku	uniform, clothing
		suitoo	canteen
		keitai	carrying, portable

Lesson 17

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	kumi	set
	shokki	tableware
	keitai-kumi-shokki	mess kit
	naifu	knife
	fooku	fork
	supuun	spoon
	koppu	cup
	mono	things
a.	Soobihin ni wa donna mono ga arimasu ka.	What sorts of equipment are there?
b.	Hifuku ya suitoo nado ga arimasu.	There are uniforms and canteens among others.
c.	Keitai-kumi-shokki ni wa nani ga arimasu ka.	What's in a mess kit?
d.	Naifu, fooku, koppu nado ga arimasu.	There are knife, fork, and cup among others.
6.	iu	informal equivalent of iimasu 'say' or 'is called'
	"A" to iu hito	a person called A, a person named A
	"B" to iu mono	a thing called B
	or	
	"B" to iu no	a thing called B
a.	Nan to iu hito ga kimashita ka.	Who came?
b.	Tanaka to iu hito ga kimashita.	A man named Tanaka came.

Lesson 17

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	c.	Keitai-kumi-shokki to iu no wa nan desu ka.	What is the thing called mess kit?
	d.	Naifu ya fooku nado desu.	It consists of knife and fork among others.
7.		deshoo	less positive or less direct equivalent of desu
	a.	Kore wa nan desu ka.	What's this?
	b.	Hon desu.	It's a book.
	c.	Hon deshoo.	It's probably a book. or I think it's a book. or It must be a book.
8.		deshoo ka	sligthly more polite question than desu ka
	a.	Kore wa nan desu ka.	What's this?
	b.	Kore wa nan deshoo ka.	What would it be? or I wonder what it is?
	c.	Kikanjuu desu ka.	Is it a machine gun?
	d.	Kikanjuu deshoo ka.	I wonder if it's a machine gun?
	e.	Kikanjuu deshoo.	I think it's a machine gun.
	f.	Karui desu ka.	Is it light?
	g.	Karui deshoo ka.	I wonder if it's light?
	h.	Karuku wa nai deshoo.	I think it's not light. or

Lesson 17

A. Perception Drill, continued.

			I don't think it's light.
9.		deshoo?	it is ---, isn't it?
		deshoo ne	more formal than *deshoo*?
	a.	Kore wa hon *deshoo*?	This is a book, isn't it?
	b.	Kore wa hon deshoo ne.	This is a book, isn't it?
	c.	Hai, hon desu.	Yes, it's a book.
	d.	Nihon ni wa nai *deshoo*?	Japan doesn't have it, does it?
	e.	Nihon ni wa nai deshoo ne.	Japan doesn't have it, does it?
	f.	Hai, nai desu.	No, it doesn't have it.
10.		ijoo	more than, over and above
		ni-mei ijoo	two or more men, more than two men
		sen-en ijoo	1,000 yen or more, more than 1,000 yen
		atsukaimasu	handle, operate (v.t.)
		soosa-shimasu	handle, operate (v.t.)
	a.	Kumiatsukai-kaki wa ni-mei ijoo de atsukaimasu.	A crew-served weapon is handled by two or more men.
	b.	Desu kara, kumiatsukai to iimasu.	So it's called crew-served.

Lesson 17

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	c.	Ikura deshita ka.	How much was it?
	d.	Sen-en ijoo deshita.	It was over 1,000 yen.
11.		dore	which of three or more?
		dore mo	any or everyone (of three or more)
	a.	Dore ga anata no desu ka.	Which (one of three or more things) is yours?
	b.	Dore mo watakushi no desu. or Minna watakushi no desu. or Dore mo minna watakushi no desu.	All of them are mine.

Lesson 17

B. Dialogue.

Infantry Weapons, Continued.

1. A: Sono hoka ni, kojinyoo-buki ni wa nani ga arimasu ka.

B: Teryuudan ya juuken ga arimasu.

2. A: Kumiatsukai-kaki ga arimasu ka.

B: Shoojuu-chuutai ni mo kumiatsukai no kaki ga arimasu.

3. A: Donna kaki ga arimasu ka.

B: Kikanjuu, rokettodan-hasshatoo, hakugekihoo, muhandoohoo nado ga arimasu.

4. A: Dore mo ni-mei ijoo de atsukaimasu ka.

B: Soo desu. Ni-mei ijoo de soosa-shimasu.

5. A: Muhandoohoo no kookei wa dono gurai deshoo ka.

B: Hyaku roku-miri desu.

6. A: Ookii desu ne. Taihen omoi deshoo?

B: Kanari omoi desu. Keredomo ryuudampoo yori wa karui desu.

7. A: Kaki no hoka ni donna soobihin ga arimasu ka.

B: Hifuku, suitoo, keitai-kumi-shokki nado iroiro arimasu.

8. A: Keitai-kumi-shokki to iu no wa nan deshoo ka.

B: Naifu, fooku, supuun, koppu nado desu. Nihon ni wa nai deshoo?

Lesson 17

B. Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Nihon ni wa nai deshoo.

   B: Hoka ni shitsumon ga arimasu ka.

10. A: Iie, arimasen. Doo mo iroiro arigatoo gozaimashita.

    B: Doo itashimashite.

Lesson 17

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What other individual weapons are there?

B: There are hand grenades and bayonets among other things.

2. A: Are there crew-served weapons?

B: There are crew-served weapons in rifle companies, too.

3. A: What sort of firearms are there?

B: There are machine guns, rocket launchers, mortars, and recoilless rifles among others.

4. A: Are all of them handled by two or more men?

B: That's right. They are handled by two or more men.

5. A: I wonder about what the caliber of a recoilless rifle is?

B: It's 106 millimeters.

6. A: That's big, isn't it? It's heavy, isn't it?

B: It's quite heavy. But it's lighter than a howitzer.

7. A: Besides the weapons, what sort of equipment are there?

B: There are various equipment such as uniforms, canteens, and mess kits.

8. A: I wonder what (the thing called) a mess kit is?

B: It consists of knife, fork, spoon, and cup among others. It doesn't exist in Japan, does it?

Lesson 17

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: I don't think it exists in Japan.
   B: Do you have other questions?

10. A: No, I don't. Thank you very much for everything.
    B: Don't mention it.

Lesson 17

D. Grammar Notes.

1. nai.

Nai is an I-adjective, and it is the informal equivalent of arimasen '--- is not, are not, am not, doesn't have, don't have'. Expressions ending in nai can be made formal by adding desu.

Examples:

Arimasen (formal)	nai (informal)	nai desu (formal)
Okane ga arimasen.	Okane ga nai.	Okane ga nai desu.
	'I have no money.'	
Hon ja arimasen.	Hon ja nai.	Hon ja nai desu.
	'It's not a book.'	
Nagaku wa arimasen.	Nagaku wa nai.	Nagaku wa nai desu.
	'It's not long.'	

2. --- to iu --- .

To is a formal quoting particle indicating what is said, called, or named. Iu is the informal equivalent of iimasu 'say'.

A to iu hito is the Japanese equivalent of 'a man named A'.

B to iu mono or B to iu no means 'a thing called B'. And

C to iu tokoro means 'a place called C'.

Examples:

Kinoo Yamada to iu hito ga kimashita.

'A man named Yamada came yesterday.'

Tanaka-san to iu sensei ni naraimashita.

'I learned it from a teacher named Mr. Tanaka.'

Kikanjuu to iu no wa hohei no buki desu.

'A thing called machine gun is an infantry weapon.'

Kore wa Hikari to iu tabako desu.

'This is a cigarette called HIKARI.'

Ginza to iu tokoro e ikimashita.

'I went to a place called GINZA.'

3. deshoo.

Deshoo is the less direct, less positive equivalent of desu. It occurs following nouns and adjectives and refers either present or future tense. Thus it is called tentative of desu.

Examples:

desu form	deshoo form
Suzuki-san desu.	Suzuki-san deshoo.
'It's Mr. Suzuki.'	'It's probably Mr. Suzuki.' or 'I think it's Mr. Suzuki.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

	or
	'It must be Mr. Suzuki.'
	or
	'It will probably be Mr. Suzuki.'
Muhandoohoo desu.	Muhandoohoo deshoo.
'It's a recoilless rifle.'	'It's probably a recoilless rifle.'
	or
	'I think it's a recoilless rifle.'
	or
	'It must be a recoilless rifle.'
	or
	'It will probably be a recoilless rifle.'
Omoi desu.	Omoi deshoo.
It's heavy.	'It's probably heavy.'
	or
	'I think it's heavy.'
	or
	'It must be heavy.'
	or
	'It will probably be heavy.'
Ii desu.	Ii deshoo.
'It's all right.'	'It's probably all right.'
	or

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

'I guess it's all right.'

or

'It must be all right.'

or

'It will probably be all right.'

4. *deshoo ka*.

Because *deshoo* is the less direct, less positive equivalent of *desu*, it is a little more polite than the latter. So *deshoo ka* is slightly more polite than *desu ka*, e.g.,

desu ka:	*deshoo ka*:
Dare desu ka.	Dare *deshoo ka*.
'Who is it?'	'Who would it be?' *or* 'I wonder who it is?' *or* 'I wonder who it will be?'
Tanaka-san *desu ka*.	Tanaka-san *deshoo ka*.
'Is it Mr. Tanaka?'	'Would it be Mr. Tanaka?' *or* 'I wonder if it's Mr. Tanaka?' *or* 'I wonder if it will be Mr. Tanaka?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Omoi desu ka.	Omoi deshoo ka.
'Is it heavy?'	'Would it be heavy?' or 'I wonder if it's heavy?' or 'I wonder if it will be heavy?'

5. deshoo? (with high rising intonation)

Occurring at the end of a sentence with high rising intonation, deshoo? means 'it is --- , isn't it?' Therefore, it's quite similar in meaning to desu ne, but is less formal.

Both deshoo? and desu ne require an answer from the person spoken to.

Examples:

Tanaka-san deshoo?
'It's Mr. Tanaka, isn't it?'
Hai, Tanaka-san desu.
'Yes, it's Mr. Tanaka.'

Ii deshoo?
'It's all right, isn't it?'
Hai, ii desu.
'Yes, it's all right.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nihon ni wa nai deshoo?

'It's not in Japan, is it?'

Hai, arimasen.

'No, it's not.'

Lesson 17

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following direct, positive sentences to the corresponding less direct, less positive sentence.

    a. Tanaka-san wa sensei desu.

    b. Ano seito wa kaigun no gunjin desu ka.

    c. Buraun-taii wa chuutai-choo desu.

    d. Are wa Nihongo no zasshi desu ka.

    e. Kikanjuu wa omoi desu.

    f. Atarashii shoojuu wa karui desu.

    g. Doitsugo wa muzukashii desu ka.

    h. Hakugekihoo wa muhandoohoo yori chiisai desu.

    i. Keitai-kumi-shokki wa Nihon ni wa nai desu ka.

    j. Ano kata wa kuugun no gunjin de wa arimasen.

    k. Sore wa rokettodan-hasshatoo de wa arimasen.

    l. Juuken wa kaki ja arimasen.

    m. Jidoo-shoojuu wa kumiatsukai no kaki ja arimasen.

    n. Suitoo wa keitai-kumi-shokki ja arimasen.

    o. Kyooshitsu ni wa teryuudan wa arimasen.

    p. Ano tatemono ni wa jimushitsu wa arimasen ka.

    q. Hohei no soobihin wa omoku wa arimasen.

    r. Buntai ni wa juukaki wa arimasen.

    s. Ryuudampoo wa karuku wa arimasen.

    t. Kenjuu wa ookiku wa arimasen.

    u. Kono zasshi wa takaku wa arimasen ka.

Lesson 17

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

2. Tell your friend that:

   a. each of the following named people came:

      (1) Tanaka

      (2) Yamada

      (3) Suzuki

      (4) Buraun

      (5) Guriin

   b. you went to each of the following named places:

      (1) Yokohama

      (2) Hiroshima

      (3) Nagasaki

      (4) Kyoto

      (5) Nagoya

   c. you saw at his home each of the following named objects:

      (1) a pen called Parker

      (2) a car called Ford

      (3) a book called Japanese

      (4) a watch called Gruen

      (5) cigarettes called Peace

3. Give an appropriate reply to each of the following utterances:

   a. Ohayoo gozaimasu.

   b. Konnichi wa.

   c. Komban wa.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

d. Ogenki desu ka.

e. Ii otenki desu ne.

f. Doo mo arigatoo gozaimasu.

g. Doo mo arigatoo gozaimashita.

h. Sayoonara.

i. Oyasuminasai.

j. Sumimasen deshita.

4. Express each of the following sentences in Japanese.

a. Over 20 students came.

b. I saw more than 20 machine guns.

c. It's more than 50 kilometers from here to Tokyo.

d. Which is yours?

e. It's operated by 3 or more men.

f. It's very heavy, isn't it?

5. Tell your company commander that:

a. Individual weapons include, among other things, the following:

hand grenade, bayonet, rifle, pistol

b. Crew-served weapons include, among other things, the following:

machine gun, rocket launcher, mortar, recoilless rifle

c. The following items are equipment:

uniform, canteen, mess kit, etc.

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill.

1.	Beigun	U. S. Army
	hifuku	clothing or uniform
	gumpuku	military uniform
	sagyoofuku	fatigues
	shatsu	undershirt
	seetaa	sweater
	tebukuro	glove
	zubon-shita	drawers
a.	Beigun no hifuku ni wa donna mono ga arimasu ka.	What sorts of things are there in the U. S. Army clothing?
b.	Gumpuku ya sagyoofuku nado ga arimasu.	There are such things as military uniforms and fatigues.
2.	jibun	oneself, itself
	jibun de	by oneself, by itself
	kaimasu	buy (v.t.)
	shikyuuhin	issue
a.	Hifuku wa jibun de kaimasu ka.	Do they buy clothing themselves?
b.	Shikyuuhin desu.	They are issues.
3.	- do	counter for number of times
	ichi-do	one time
	ni-do	two times
	san-do	three times

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	yon-do or yo-do	four times
	go-do	five times
	roku-do	six times
	nana-do or shichi-do	seven times
	hachi-do	eight times
	kyuu-do	nine times
	juu-do	ten times
	nan-do or iku-do	how many times?
	moraimasu	receive (v.t.)
a.	Gumpuku wa nan-do moraimasu ka.	How many times do they receive uniforms?
b.	Ichi-do dake moraimasu.	They receive them only once.
	ato	afterward
	sore kara ato	after that
c.	Sore kara ato wa jibun de kaimasu.	After that, they buy them themselves.
4.	- chaku	counter for number of suits
	it-chaku	one suit
	ni-chaku	two suits
	san-chaku	three suits
	yon-chaku	four suits
	go-chaku	five suits
	roku-chaku	six suits
	nana-chaku	seven suits

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	hat-chaku	eight suits
	kyuu-chaku	nine suits
	jit-chaku or jut-chaku	ten suits
	nan-chaku or iku-chaku	how many suits?
a.	Gumpuku wa nan-chaku moraimasu ka.	How many suits of uniforms do they receive?
b.	It-chaku dake moraimasu.	They receive only one suit.
5.	ichi-bu	a part, one copy
	ba-ai	circumstance, occasion, situation
	ni yotte	depending on, according to
	ba-ai ni yotte	depending on situations, under certain circumstances
a.	Seetaa mo moraimasu ka.	Do they also receive sweaters?
b.	Ba-ai ni yotte wa, seetaa mo shikyuuhin no ichi-bu desu.	Under certain circumstances, sweaters are also part of issues.
6.	- soku	counter for number of pairs of footwear
	is-soku	one pair
	ni-soku	two pairs
	san-zoku	three pairs
	yon-soku	four pairs
	go-soku	five pairs

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		roku-soku	six pairs
		nana-soku	seven pairs
		has-soku	eight pairs
		kyuu-soku	nine pairs
		jis-soku or jus-soku	ten pairs
		nan-zoku or iku-soku	how many pairs?
	a.	Kutsu wa nan-zoku moraimasu ka.	How many pairs of shoes do they receive?
	b.	Ni-soku moraimasu.	They receive two pairs.
7.		seifuku	regulation uniform
		seiboo	regulation cap
		sentaku-shimasu	launder, wash (clothes only, v.t.)
		araimasu	wash (anything, v.t.)
		mochiron	of course
		dorai-kuriiningu	dry-cleaning
		dashimasu	send out, take out (v.t.)
		dorai-kuriiningu ni dashimasu	send out to be dry-cleaned
	a.	Seifuku ya seiboo wa dare ga araimasu ka.	Who washes regulation uniforms and caps?
	b.	Mochiron, dorai-kuriiningu ni dashimasu.	Of course, they send them out to be dry-cleaned.
8.		- shu	counter for number of kinds or types
		is-shu	one kind

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	ni-shu	two kinds
	san-shu	three kinds
	yon-shu	four kinds
	go-shu	five kinds
	roku-shu	six kinds
	nana-shu	seven kinds
	has-shu	eight kinds
	kyuu-shu	nine kinds
	jis-shu _or_ jus-shu	ten kinds
	nan-shu _or_ iku-shu	how many kinds?
a.	Gumpuku wa seifuku no _is-shu_ desu.	Military uniform is a kind of regulation uniforms.
	junsa	police, policeman
b.	Junsa no uwagi ya zubon mo seifuku no _is-shu_ desu.	Policemen's coats and trousers are also a kind of regulation uniforms.
9.	teate	allowance
	hifuku-teate	clothing allowance, uniform allowance
	onaji _or_ onnaji	same
	to onaji	same as
	chigaimasu	is different, differ (v.i.)
	to chigaimasu	is different from, differ from

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Shookoo no hifuku-teate wa kashikanhei no hifuku-teate to onaji desu ka.	Is the officers' uniform allowance the same as enlisted men's clothing allowance?
b.	Shookoo no hifuku-teate wa kashikanhei no to chigaimasu.	The officers' uniform allowance is different from the enlisted men's clothing allowance.

10.	--- koto ga dekimasu	is able to ---, is possible to, can
	kaku	informal equivalent of kakimasu 'write, draw'
	hanasu	informal equivalent of hanashimasu 'speak, talk, tell'
	tatsu	informal equivalent of tachimasu 'stand up'
	kau	informal equivalent of kaimasu 'buy'
	morau	informal equivalent of moraimasu 'receive'
	arau	informal equivalent of araimasu 'wash'
	toru	informal equivalent of torimasu 'take, pick up'
	kagu	informal equivalent of kagimasu 'smell'
	taberu	informal equivalent of tabemasu 'eat'
	oshieru	informal equivalent of oshiemasu 'teach'

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	dekiru	informal equivalent of dekimasu 'is able to, is possible to, can'
	suru	informal equivalent of shimasu 'do'
	kuru	informal equivalent of kimasu 'come'
a.	Kanji o kaku koto ga dekimasu ka.	Can you write KANJI?
b.	Iie, (kaku koto ga) dekimasen.	No, I can't.
11.	--- no or --- n	matter, care, fact
	--- no desu or --- n desu	it is a matter of --- (formal predicate preceded by the informal equivalent of a verb)
	kaku no desu or kaku n desu	equivalent of kakimasu 'write, draw'
	hanasu no desu or hanasu n desu	equivalent of hanashimasu 'speak, talk, tell'
	tatsu no desu or tatsu n desu	equivalent of tachimasu 'stand up'
	kau no desu or kau n desu	equivalent of kaimasu 'buy'
	morau no desu or morau n desu	equivalent of moraimasu 'receive'
	arau no desu or arau n desu	equivalent of araimasu 'wash'
	toru no desu or toru n desu	equivalent of torimasu 'take, pick up'

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		oshieru no desu or oshieru n desu	equivalent of oshiemasu 'teach'
		dekiru no desu or dekiru n desu	equivalent of dekimasu 'is able to, is possible to, can'
		suru no desu or suru n desu	equivalent of shimasu 'do'
		kuru no desu or kuru n desu	equivalent of kimasu 'come'
	a.	Kutsu wa nan-zoku morau no desu ka.	How many pairs of shoes do they receive?
	b.	Ni-soku morau n desu.	They receive two pairs.
12.		kaku deshoo	probably write (less direct, less positive equivalent of kakimasu)
		morau deshoo	probably receive (less direct, less positive equivalent of moraimasu)
		dekiru deshoo	probably can (less direct, less positive equivalent of dekimasu)
		suru deshoo	probably do (less direct, less positive equivalent of shimasu)
	a.	Kau koto ga dekiru deshoo ka.	I wonder if they can buy it? or Do you think they can buy it?
	b.	Dekiru deshoo.	I think they can. or Probably they can.

Lesson 18

A. Perception Drill, continued.

13.		nakanaka .... -masen	not easily
		nakanaka	quite, very
	a.	Nakanaka kau koto ga dekimasen.	I can't buy it easily.
	b.	Nakanaka muzukashii desu.	It's quite difficult.
14.		da	informal equivalent of the copula desu 'is, am, are'
	a.	Ikura da.	How much is it? (informal equivalent of ikura desu ka)
	b.	Sanzen-yen da.	It's 3,000 yen. (informal equivalent of sanzen-yen desu)
15.		shitte imasu	know
		shirimasen	don't know
	a.	Shitte imasu ka.	Do you know?
	b.	Iie, shirimasen.	No, I don't know.
	c.	Nan desu ka shitte imasu ka.	Do you know what it is?
	d.	Ikura desu ka shitte imasu ka.	Do you know how much it is?
	e.	Ikura da ka shirimasen.	I don't know how much it is.

Lesson 18

B. Dialogue.

Clothing

1. A: Konnichi wa.

B: Konnichi wa.

2. A: Kyoo wa Beigun no hifuku ni tsuite shitsumon ga arimasu.

B: Soo desu ka.

3. A: Hifuku ni wa donna mono ga arimasu ka.

B: Gumpuku, sagyoofuku, shatsu nado ga arimasu.

4. A: Hifuku wa minna shikyuuhin desu ka.

B: Kashikanhei wa ichi-do dake moraimasu ga, sore kara ato wa jibun de kaimasu.

5. A: Sagyoofuku nado mo jibun de kaimasu ka.

B: It-chaku wa moraimasu ga, ato wa jibun de kaimasu.

6. A: Seetaa ya tebukuro wa.

B: Ba-ai ni yotte wa, seetaa mo tebukuro mo shikyuuhin no ichi-bu desu.

7. A: Kutsu wa nan-zoku morau no desu ka.

B: Mochiron kutsu mo shikyuuhin de, ni-soku moraimasu.

8. A: Hifuku wa dare ga sentaku-suru n desu ka.

B: Sagyoofuku, shatsu, zubon-shita nado wa hima no toki ni jibun de araimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Gumpuku wa.

B: Seifuku, seiboo nado wa jibun de arau koto ga dekimasen kara, dorai-kuriiningu ni dashimasu.

10. A: Gumpuku to seifuku wa onaji desu ka.

B: Gumpuku wa seifuku no is-shu desu.

11. A: Dewa, junsa no uwagi ya zubon mo seifuku desu ne.

B: Hai, soo desu.

12. A: Gumpuku wa it-chaku ikura da ka shitte imasu ka.

B: Soo desu ne. Yoku shirimasen ga, kashikanhei no wa it-chaku shichi-hachijuu-doru gurai deshoo. Kanari takai desu.

13. A: Sore dewa atarashii no wa nakanaka kau koto ga dekimasen ne.

B: Soo desu. Demo, teate o morau n desu kara, taitei kau koto ga dekiru deshoo.

14. A: Doo mo arigatoo gozaimashita.

B: Doo itashimashite.

Lesson 18

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Good afternoon.

   B: Good afternoon.

2. A: I have some questions about clothing of American army today.

   B: I see.

3. A: What sorts of things are there in clothing?

   B: Such things as uniforms, fatigues, and undershirts.

4. A: Are all clothing issues?

   B: Enlisted men receive them only once, but after that they buy them themselves.

5. A: Do they buy such things as fatigues themselves, too?

   B: They receive one set, but after that they buy them themselves.

6. A: How about sweaters and gloves?

   B: Under certain circumstances, both sweaters and gloves are part of issues.

7. A: How many pairs of shoes do they receive?

   B: Of course, shoes are issues, too, and they receive two pairs.

8. A: Who washes clothing?

   B: They wash such things as fatigues, undershirts and drawers themselves during free time.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: How about (military) uniforms?

B: They can't wash regulation uniforms and caps themselves, so they send them out to be dry-cleaned.

10. A: Is 'military uniform' the same as 'regulation uniform'?

B: Military uniform is a kind of regulation uniforms.

11. A: Then policemen's coats and trousers are also regulation uniforms, aren't they?

B: Yes, they are.

12. A: Do you know how much a suit of military uniform is?

B: Well, I don't know for sure, but I think those for enlisted men are about 70 or 80 dollars a suit. They are quite expensive.

13. A: Then, they can't buy new ones easily, can they?

B: That's right. But they receive allowance, so I guess they can buy them usually.

14. A: Thank you very much.

B: You're welcome.

Lesson 18

D. Grammar Notes.

1. -*do*, -*chaku*, -*soku*, -*shu*.

-*Do*, -*chaku*, -*soku* and -*shu* are counters to count the number of times, suits of clothes, pairs of footwear, and kinds, respectively. Each of them is compounded with the Chinese series of numerals with few exceptions. Note that some combinations result in assimilated forms:

-do 'times'	-chaku 'suits'	-soku 'pairs'	-shu 'kinds'
ichi-do	it-chaku	is-soku	is-shu
ni-do	ni-chaku	ni-soku	ni-shu
san-do	san-chaku	san-zoku	san-shu
yon-do *or* yo-do	yon-chaku	yon-soku	yon-shu
go-do	go-chaku	go-soku	go-shu
roku-do	roku-chaku	roku-soku	roku-shu
nana-do *or* shichi-do	nana-chaku	nana-soku	nana-shu
hachi-do	hat-chaku	has-soku	has-shu
kyuu-do	kyuu-chaku	kyuu-soku	kyuu-shu
juu-do	jit-chaku *or* jut-chaku	jis-soku *or* jus-soku	jis-shu *or* jus-shu
nan-do *or* iku-do	nan-chaku *or* iku-chaku	nan-zoku *or* iku-soku	nan-shu *or* iku-shu

2. *A wa B to onaji desu.*

The word *onaji* 'same' functions both as a noun and as a pre-noun. It occurs as a noun when followed by any form of the copula desu, and it occurs as a pre-noun like kono, sono and ano when immediately followed by a noun, e.g.,

a. As a noun.

A wa B to onaji desu.

'A is the same as B.'

Note that the particle to in the above example means 'as'.

Compare the above example with the following sentence:

A to B wa onaji desu.

'A and B are the same.'

b. As a pre-noun.

Tanaka-san to Yamada-san wa onaji gakkoo e ikimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Yamada attended the same school.'

The word onnaji is sometimes used in place of onaji.

3. A wa B to chigaimasu.

The word chigaimasu 'differ, is different' is the formal -masu form of the verb chigau, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

A wa B to chigaimasu.

'A is different from B.'

Note that the particle to in the above example corresponds to 'from'. Compare the above example with the following:

A to B wa chigaimasu.

'A and B are different.'

4. Informal equivalent of -masu form.

For every -masu form, there is an informal equivalent. This informal equivalent is sometimes known as the basic or dictionary form of a verb, for it is customary to refer to verbs by their basic forms and these are the forms under which verbs are entered in dictionaries.

Examples:

a. Consonant verbs:

Formal or -masu form		Informal or basic form
kakimasu	'write	kaku
kikimasu	'hear'	kiku
arukimasu	'walk'	aruku
okimasu	'put'	oku
ikimasu	'go'	iku
hanashimasu	'talk'	hanasu
dashimasu	'send out'	dasu

Lesson 18

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

mochimasu	'hold'	motsu
tachimasu	'stand up'	tatsu

naraimasu	'learn'	narau
tsukaimasu	'use'	tsukau
moraimasu	'receive'	morau
atsukaimasu	'handle'	atsukau
kaimasu	'buy'	kau
araimasu	'wash'	arau
iimasu	'say'	iu

kakarimasu	'cost, take'	kakaru
torimasu	'take'	toru
arimasu	'is, exist'	aru
wakarimasu	'understand'	wakaru
kaerimasu	'go back'	kaeru
hairimasu	'enter'	hairu

kagimasu	'smell'	kagu

b. Vowel verbs:

dekimasu	'can'	dekiru
tojimasu	'close'	tojiru
mimasu	'see'	miru
imasu	'is, exist'	iru

akemasu	'open'	akeru
shimemasu	'shut'	shimeru
kakemasu	'sit down'	kakeru
oshiemasu	'teach'	oshieru
tabemasu	'eat'	taberu

c. Irregular verbs:

shimasu	'do'	suru
sentaku-shimasu	'launder'	sentaku-suru
soosa-shimasu	'handle'	soosa-suru
kimasu	'come'	kuru

d. Special honorific verbs:

kudasaimasu	'give me'	kudasaru
irasshaimasu	'is, come, go'	irassharu
nasaimasu	'do'	nasaru

Note from the above examples that there are four sub-groups of verbs: Consonant Verbs, Vowel Verbs, Irregular Verbs, and Honorific Verbs.

Lesson 18

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Consonant verbs are so called because their roots end in certain consonants or their ending changes its form after a certain consonant. The consonant verbs include the following:

-k, -s (or -sh), -t (or -ts *or* -ch),
-w (as in wa, ~~w~~i, ~~w~~u, ~~w~~e, or ~~w~~o)
-r, -g, -n, -m, and -b.

Vowel verbs are so called because their roots end in *-i* or *-e*.

Irregular verbs change their forms irregulary. There are only two such verbs meaning 'do' and 'come', respectively.

Special honorific verbs (though there are only five) have their respective plain equivalents as was explained previously. But their inflection is different from other groups of verbs as shown in the examples.

In general, the informal form is used most commonly in addressing friends and social inferiors informally whereas the formal *-masu* form is used in addressing strangers, casual acquaintances, and superiors, and in addressing persons of equal or inferior social standing formally. Honorific words are used in addressing persons of equal or superior social standing. Women use honorific words more commonly than men.

Lesson 18

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

5. --- koto ga dekimasu.

In Japanese there are several ways to express the potential meaning. One way is to follow the informal or basic form of a verb with koto ga dekimasu 'can ---, is able to ---, is possible to ---'. Of course, the resulting combination is formal.

Examples:

Kau koto ga dekimasu ka.
'Can you buy it?'
Hai, (kau koto ga) dekimasu.
'Yes, I can (buy it).'
Iie, (kau koto ga) dekimasen.
'No, I can't (buy it).'
Oshieru koto ga dekimasu ka.
'Can you teach it?'
Hai, (oshieru koto ga) dekimasu.
'Yes, I can (teach it).'
Iie, (oshieru koto ga) dekimasen.
'No, I can't (teach it.)'
Kuru koto ga dekimasu ka.
'Can you come?'
Hai, (kuru koto ga) dekimasu.
'Yes, I can (come).'

2

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Iie, (kuru koto ga) dekimasen.

'No, I can't (come).'

The potential equivalent of the verb suru 'do' is often dekimasu 'can' instead of suru koto ga dekimasu 'can do'.

Shatsu wa jibun de sentaku-dekimasu ga,
gumpuku wa dekimasen.

'I can wash shirts by myself, but not
the uniform.'

The particle ga in the phrase koto ga dekimasu may be changed to wa or mo when a contrast or emphasis is to be made, e.g.,

Hairu koto wa dekimasu ga ,
deru koto wa dekimasen.

'You can get in, but you
can't get out.'

Kaku koto mo dekimasu.

'I can write it, too.'

Akeru koto mo, shimeru koto
mo dekimasen.

'I can't either open or shut it.'

6. --- no desu or --- n desu.

The informal, basic form of a verb often occurs in front of an extra predicate no desu or n desu, meaning literally 'it is a matter of ---', to change the informal speech to the corresponding softer, less direct and more formal speech without changing the meaning of the verb, e.g.,

Jidoosha de iku no desu ka.
'Are you going by car?'
Hai, jidoosha de iku n desu.
'Yes, I'm going by car.'

Shatsu wa jibun de arau no desu ka.
'Do you wash your shirts by yourself?'
Hai, jibun de arau n desu.
'Yes, I wash them by myself.'

N is the contracted form of no meaning 'matter, case'.

7. Informal verb plus deshoo.

The use of deshoo occurring after adjectives and nouns has been introduced previously. Deshoo may also follow the informal or basic form of a verb to change the verb to the corresponding softer, less direct, and formal speech with the added meaning of probability, e.g.,

Tanaka-san wa ashita Yokohama ni iku deshoo ka.

'I wonder if Mr. Tanaka will go to Yokohama tomorrow?'

or

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Do you think Mr. Tanaka will go to Yokohama tomorrow?

Hai, iku deshoo.

'Yes, I think he will (go).'

Yamada-san wa atarashii jidoosha o kau koto ga dekiru deshoo ka.

'I wonder if Mr. Yamada can buy a new car?'

or

'Do you think Mr. Yamada can buy a new car?'

Hai, dekiru deshoo.

'Yes, I think he can.'

7. nakanaka.

The word nakanaka means either 'easily, readily' or 'quite, considerably' depending on the sentence in which it occurs. It normally occurs with a negative verb with the meaning 'easily, readily' and it also occurs with an affirmative adjective with the meaning of 'quite, considerably', e.g.,

Kono mado wa nakanaka akeru koto ga dekimasen.

'I can't open this window easily.'

Ii hon wa nakanaka arimasen.

'Good books are not found easily.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nakanaka *wakarimasen* deshita.

'I didn't understand it readily.'

Nakanaka *muzukashii* desu ne.

'It's quite difficult, isn't it?'

Nakanaka *ii* desu ne.

'It's quite good, isn't it?'

8. *da*.

Da is the informal equivalent of the formal copula *desu* 'is, am, are', e.g.,

formal	*informal*
Kore wa hon *desu*.	Kore wa hon *da*.
'This is a book.'	
Sore wa kikanjuu *desu*.	Sore wa kikanjuu *da*.
'That's a machine gun.'	

The informal equivalent of an interrogative copulative sentence containing question word (like *nani*, *dare*, *doko*) is often without the copula *da* and/or *ka*, e.g.,

Formal: Kore wa nan *desu ka*.

'What's this?'

Informal: Kore wa nani? (Used commonly by women.)

or

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kore wa nani ka. (Used commonly by men.)
'What's this?'

9. shitte imasu.

Shitte is a form of the verb shiru or shirimasu 'know'. However, to express a state of having become knowledgeable, shitte imasu is used instead, e.g.,

Nihongo o shitte imasu ka.
'Do you know Japanese?'
Hai, shitte imasu.
'Yes, I do (or know).'
Iie, shirimasen.

Note that the negative of shitte imasu 'know' is shirimasen 'don't know'.

10. --- ka shitte imasu ka.

When a question is raised asking if one does or does not know, remember, understand or have the answer to a given question, the given question is stated first with the particle ka always following. The given question may be either in the formal or informal form. However, the informal form occurs more commonly than the formal form even when the final predicate is in the formal form, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Taroo wa ashita doko e iku ka
shitte imasu ka.

'Do you know where Taro is going tomorrow?'

Komban dare ga kuru ka shitte imasu ka.

'Do you know who is coming tonight?'

Ano kata wa dare (da) ka shitte imasu ka.

'Do you know who he is?'

Kore wa nan (da) ka shitte imasu ka.

'Do you what this is?'

Kono tabako wa hito-hako ikura (da) ka
shitte imasu ka.

'Do you know how much a pack of these
cigarettes is?'

Note that the copula da may or may not occur between a question word and the particle ka.

Lesson 18

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Tell your friend that:
   - a. Mr. A's allowance is the same as Mr. B's.
   - b. Your name is the same as that of your friend.
   - c. You and your friend went to the same school.
   - d. Mr. A and Mr. B came from the same place.
   - e. Your book is different from your friend's.

2. Change each of the following formal expressions to the corresponding equivalent ending in no desu or n desu:
   - a. Atsui kara mado o akemasu.
   - b. Soto wa samui kara naka ni hairimasu.
   - c. Watakushi wa uchi e kaerimasu.
   - d. Uchi kara gakkoo made juugo-fun kakarimasu.
   - e. Tanaka-san wa ashita kimasu.
   - f. Taitei pen o tsukaimasu.
   - g. Nihon de Nihongo o naraimasu.
   - h. Buraun-san wa Nihon-jin ni Eigo o oshiemasu.
   - i. Ano kata wa Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasu.
   - j. Zubon-shita wa jibun de sentaku-shimasu.
   - k. Mochiron ashi de arukimasu.

3. On the basis of the table below, ask and then answer questions about Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Yamada:

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

	can	can't
Tanaka	walk buy a car go home enter this room	teach English eat it come to school use machine gun
Yamada	teach English eat it come to school use machine gun	walk buy a car go home enter this room

4. Tell your instructor that you:
   - a. can't stay home (be at home).
   - b. can't sit down.
   - c. can't open your left eye.
   - d. can hear radio, but can't watch TV.
   - e. can either talk or write.
   - f. can't come to school yet.
   - g. can use a pistol, but can't handle a recoilless rifle.

5. Ask in a soft and less direct manner if your friend thinks:
   - a. Mr. Tanaka can teach English.
   - b. Mr. Yamada can handle a mortar.
   - c. Mr. Suzuki will buy a new car.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

d. Mr. Sato will close his office.

e. Mr. Brown speaks Japanese.

6. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions, using nakanaka whenever applicable:

a. Nihon wa buki o kau koto ga dekimasu ka.

b. Yamane-san wa Eigo o oshieru koto ga dekimasu ka.

c. Nihongo ga wakarimasu ka.

d. Atarashii uchi o kau koto ga dekimasu ka.

e. Ano gakkoo ni hairu koto ga dekimasu ka.

f. Eigo wa muzukashii desu ka.

g. Atarashii jidoosha wa takai desu ka.

h. Hokkaidoo wa samui desu ka.

7. Ask your friend if he knows:

a. What his instructor's name is.

b. Where Mr. Tanaka is.

c. What Mr. Yamada is going to buy.

d. Where you can buy a pistol.

e. What color the U. S. Army uniform is.

f. How much an enlisted man's clothing allowance is.

g. How many men a company has.

8. Tell your friend that you bought:

a. Three pairs of shoes.
b. Two sets of fatigues.
c. Four pairs of socks.

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill.

1.		hiroba	open space, open place, open field
		kunren	training
		kunren-joo	training field, training ground
	a.	Kono hiroba wa nan desu ka.	What's this open space?
	b.	Kunren-joo desu.	It's a training field.
		kiso	base, foundation
		kiso-kunren	basic training
		no kunren o shimasu	conduct training on (or in)
		kunren-shimasu	train (v.t.)
	c.	Kunren-joo de nani o shimasu ka.	What do they do at the training field?
	d.	Kiso-kunren o shimasu.	They conduct basic training.
2.		kochira	over here, this side
		sochira	over there, that side
		achira	over there, that side over there
		dochira	which side?
		mukoo	over there, yonder
		shageki	firing
		shageki-joo	firing range
	a.	Shageki-joo wa doko ni arimasu ka.	Where is the firing range?
	b.	Achira ni arimasu.	It's over there.

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

3.	teire	care, upkeep, repair
	teire o suru	take care, maintain
	sooji	cleaning
	sooji o suru or sooji-suru	clean (v.t.)
	hei	soldier
	heitai	soldier
	heitai-tachi	soldiers
	mainichi	everyday, daily
a.	Heitai-tachi wa mainichi shoojuu no teire o shimasu ka.	Do the soldiers take care of their rifles everyday?
b.	Hai, mainichi sooji-shimasu.	Yes, they clean them daily.
4.	ana	hole
	kakko	individual
	entai	shelter
	kakko-entai	foxhole
	horimasu	dig (formal form of horu, v.t.)
	tsukurimasu	build, make, manufacture, produce (formal form of tsukuru, v.t.)
a.	Donna ana o horimashita ka.	What sort of hole did you dig?
b.	Kakko-entai o tsukurimashita.	I built a foxhole.

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

5.	hotondo	almost
	wakai	young (I-adj)
	toshiyori	old person
a.	Hei wa hotondo minna wakai desu.	Soldiers are almost all young.
b.	Hei wa hotondo mainichi shoojuu o sooji-shimasu.	Soldiers clean their rifles almost everyday.
6.	toshi	age, year
	hitotsu	1 year old
	futatsu	2 years old
	mittsu	3 years old
	yottsu	4 years old
	itsutsu	5 years old
	muttsu	6 years old
	nanatsu	7 years old
	yattsu	8 years old
	kokonotsu	9 years old
	too	10 years old
	juuichi	11 years old
	juuni	12 years old
	juuku	19 years old
	hatachi	20 years old
	ikutsu	how old?
	oikutsu	polite equivalent of ikutsu

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Toshi wa oikutsu desu ka.	How old are you?
b.	Hatachi desu.	I'm 20 years old.
7.	setsumei	explanation
	setsumei o shimasu or setsumei-shimasu	explain (v.t.)
	hoo	gun
a.	Dare ga hoo ni tsuite setsumei-shimasu ka.	Who explains about the gun?
b.	Kashikan ga shimasu.	Noncommissioned officers do.
8.	kaimasu	buy
	kai-kata	how to buy
	iimasu	say
	ii-kata	how to say
	hanashimasu	talk, speak
	hanashi-kata	how to talk
	oshiemasu	teach
	oshie-kata	how to teach
	tabemasu	eat
	tabe-kata	how to eat
	mimasu	see
	mi-kata	how to see
	shimasu	do
	shi-kata	how to do

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	nagemasu	throw (formal form of nageru, v.t.)
	nage-kata	how to throw
	horimasu	dig
	hori-kata	how to dig
	jirai	mine
a.	Jirai no hori-kata o naraimashita ka.	Have you learned how to dig up mines?
b.	Hai, naraimashita.	Yes, I have.
9.	kaimasu	buy
a.	Kaimashoo ka.	Shall we buy it?
b.	Kaimashoo.	Let's buy it.
	kaerimasu	go back, go home
c.	Kaerimashoo ka.	Shall we go home?
d.	Kaerimashoo.	Let's go home.
	ikimasu	go
e.	Ikimashoo ka.	Shall we go?
f.	Ikimashoo.	Let's go.
	arukimasu	walk
g.	Arukimashoo ka.	Shall we walk?
h.	Arukimashoo.	Let's walk.
	tabemasu	eat
i.	Tabemashoo ka.	Shall we eat?
j.	tabemashoo.	Let's eat.

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		kimasu	come
	k.	Kimashoo ka.	Shall we come?
	l.	Kimashoo.	Let's come.
		shimasu	do
	m.	Shimashoo ka.	Shall we do it?
	n.	Shimashoo.	Let's do it.
10.	a.	Nihongo o kakimasu.	I write Japanese. or I'm going to write Japanese.
	b.	Nihongo o kaite imasu.	I'm writing Japanese.
	c.	Rajio o kikimasu.	I listen to the radio. or I'm going to listen to the radio.
	d.	Rajio o kiite imasu.	I'm listening to the radio.
	e.	Eigo o hanashimasu.	I speak English. or I'm going to speak English.
	f.	Eigo o hanashite imasu.	I'm speaking English.
	g.	Tachimasu.	I stand up. or I'm going to stand up.
	h.	Tatte imasu.	I'm standing.
	i.	Teryuudan o mochimasu.	I hold a hand grenade. or I'm going to hold a hand grenade.

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

j.	Teryuudan o motte imasu.	I'm holding a hand grenade. or I have a hand grenade.
k.	Nihongo o naraimasu.	I learn Japanese. or I'm going to learn Japanese.
l.	Nihongo o naratte imasu.	I'm learning Japanese.
m.	Shatsu o araimasu.	I wash undershirts. or I'm going to wash undershirts.
n.	Shatsu o aratte imasu.	I'm washing undershirts.
o.	Kakko-entai o tsukurimasu.	I build a foxhole. or I'm going to build a foxhole.
p.	Kakko-entai o tsukutte imasu.	I'm building a foxhole.
q.	Ana o horimasu.	I dig a hole. or I'm going to dig a hole.
r.	Ana o hotte imasu.	I'm digging a hole.
s.	Ii nioi o kagimasu.	I smell a sweet aroma. or I'm going to smell a sweet aroma.
t.	Ii nioi o kaide imasu.	I'm smelling a sweet aroma.
u.	Nani ka nagemasu.	I throw something. or I'm going to throw something.
v.	Nani ka nagete imasu.	I'm throwing something.

Lesson 19

A. Perception Drill, continued.

w.	Nani o shimasu ka.	What do you do? or What are you going to do?
x.	Nani o shite imasu ka.	What are you doing?
y.	Nanni mo shite imasen.	I'm not doing anything.
11.	ichi-do	one time, once
	ichi-do dake	only one time, only once.
	ichi-do wa	at least once
a.	Nando naraimasu ka.	How many times do they learn?
b.	Ichi-do naraimasu.	They learn once.
c.	Ichi-do dake naraimasu.	They learn only once.
d.	Ichi-do wa naraimasu.	They learn at least once.

Lesson 19

B. Dialogue.

Basic Training

1. A: Kono hiroba de wa heitai wa nani o shite iru n desu ka.

B: Kono hiroba wa kunren-joo de, iroiro no kunren o shite imasu.

2. A: Kiso-kunren desu ka.

B: Soo desu.

3. A: Kono heitai-tachi wa nani o shite iru n desu ka.

B: Shoojuu no teire o shite imasu.

4. A: Teire wa mainichi suru n desu ka.

B: Hai, hotondo mainichi shimasu. Shageki-joo de shageki no renshuu o shimasu kara, sono ato de sooji o shimasu.

5. A: Achira de wa,nani ka nagete imasu ne.

B: Teryuudan no nage-kata no kunren o shite imasu.

6. A: Kochira de wa,ana o hotte imasu ne.

B: Soo desu. Kakko-entai o tsukutte imasu. Sono mukoo de wa,jirai no hori-kata o naratte imasu.

7. A: Kono hei-tachi wa minna wakai desu ne. Ikutsu gurai desu ka.

B: Toshi wa juuhachi kara hatachi gurai desu. Aru hei wa nijuu san-shi desu. Kashikan de mo, toshiyori wa imasen.

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Are wa nan desu ka.

   B: Muhandoohoo desu. Ittoo-gunsoo ga hei ni sono hoo ni tsuite, setsumei-shite imasu.

9. A: Hei wa minna muhandoohoo ni tsuite narau n desu ka.

   B: Soo desu. Kiso-kunren no toki, hohei no buki ni tsuite wa, minna ichi-do wa naraimasu.

10. A: Are wa chuutai-choo deshoo?

    B: Soo desu. Ima asuko de kunren o mite imasu.

11. A: Watakushi-tachi mo asuko e ikimashoo ka.

    B: Hai, ikimashoo.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What are the soldiers doing in this open space?

   B: This open space is a training field, and they are doing all sorts of training.

2. A: You mean basic training?

   B: That's right.

3. A: What are these soldiers doing?

   B: They are taking care of their rifles.

4. A: Do they take care of them everyday?

   B: Yes, they do almost everyday. They practice firing at the firing range, so they clean them after that.

5. A: Over there, they are throwing something, aren't they?

   B: They are giving training on how to throw hand grenades.

6. A: Over here, they are digging holes, aren't they?

   B: That's right. They are building foxholes.. Beyond that, they are learning how to dig up mines.

7. A: These soldiers are all young, aren't they? About how old are they?

   B: They are from about 18 to 20 years old. Some soldiers are 23 or 24 years old. Even among noncommissioned officers, there are no old persons.

   (Lit: Even if they are noncommissioned officers, there are no old persons.)

Lesson 19

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: What's that over there?

   B: That's a recoilless rifle. A sergeant first class is explaining about the gun to the soldiers.

9. A: Do all soldiers learn about recoilless rifle?

   B: That's right. They learn about all infantry weapons at least once during the basic training.

10. A: He is a company commander, isn't he?

    B: That's right. He is watching the training over there now.

11. A: Shall we go over there, too?

    B: Yes, let's go.

Lesson 19

D. Grammar Notes.

1. *toshi* and *ikutsu*.

The word *toshi* means 'age' or 'year', and the word *ikutsu* means 'how many years of age?' or 'how many?'. In stating one's age, normally the native series of numerals is used for ages from 1 through 10, and the Chinese series of numerals for ages over 10 except for 20. For the age 20, the word *hatachi* is used. Thus:

hitotsu	1 year old	yattsu	8 years old
futatsu	2 years old	kokonotsu	9 years old
mittsu	3 years old	too	10 years old
yottsu	4 years old	juuichi	11 years old
itsutsu	5 years old	juuni	12 years old
muttsu	6 years old	*hatachi*	20 years old
nanatsu	7 years old	nijuu ichi	21 years old

The word *oikutsu* is a polite equivalent of *ikutsu* 'how old?, how many years old?, how many?'.

Tanaka-san wa oikutsu desu ka.
'How old is Mr. Tanaka?'
Hatachi desu.
'He is 20.'

2. *-kata*.

-*Kata* means 'method, way'. Replace -*masu* of the

-masu form of a verb with -kata, and the result is a noun meaning 'method of doing so-and-so'.

-masu form		-kata	
oshiemasu	'teach'	oshie-kata	'teaching method, how to teach'
hanashimasu	'talk, speak'	hanashi-kata	'way of talking, speaking, how to talk'
nagemasu	'throw'	nage-kata	'way of throwing, how to throw'
horimasu	'dig'	hori-kata	'way of digging, how to dig'
shimasu	'do'	shi-kata	'way of doing, method, how to do'

Ano sensei no oshie-kata wa taihen ii desu.

'That teacher's teaching method is very good.'

Heitai-tachi wa teryuudan no nage-kata o naratte imasu.

'Soldiers are learning how to throw hand grenades.'

3. -mashoo and -mashoo ka.

By changing the -masu ending of a verb to -mashoo, the tentative or suggestive form of the verb is made. The tentative or -mashoo form of a verb usually means 'let's do so-and-so'. However, the -mashoo form plus the question particle ka is a suggestion or offer, meaning 'shall we do so-and-so?' or 'shall I do so-and-so?'.

Examples:

Ikimashoo ka.
'Shall we go?'
Ikimashoo.
'Let's go.'

Ikimashoo ka.
'Shall I go?'

Hai, onegaishimasu.
'Yes, please.'
(Lit: Yes, I make a request.)

Mado o akemashoo ka.
'Shall we open the window?'
Akemashoo.
'Let's open.'

Mado o akemashoo ka.
'Shall I open the window?'
Onegaishimasu.
'Please.'

4. TE form of verbs.

The TE form of I-adjectives was introduced previously. The TE form of verbs is formed as follows:

Lesson 19

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

a. Vowel verbs:

-Masu form		Basic form	TE form
tabemasu	'eat'	taberu	tabete
mimasu	'see'	miru	mite

b. Consonant verbs:

kakimasu	'write'	kaku*	kaite
naraimasu	'learn'	narau	naratte
tsukurimasu	'build'	tsukuru	tsukutte
tachimasu	'stand up'	tatsu	tatte
hanashimasu	'talk'	hanasu	hanashite
kagimasu	'smell'	kagu	kaide
tobimasu	'fly'	tobu	tonde
yomimasu	'read'	yomu	yonde
shinimasu	'die'	shinu	shinde

c. Irregular verbs:

shimasu	'do'	suru	shite
kimasu	'come'	kuru	kite

d. Special honorific verbs:

nasaimasu	'do'	nasaru	nasatte
irasshaimasu	'is, come, go'	irassharu	irasshatte

Lesson 19

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

*There is one exception to this group of consonant verbs. The TE form of the consonant verb iku 'go' is itte.

5. TE form of verbs plus imasu.

The TE form of verbs occurs before imasu (or its honorific equivalent irasshaimasu) with the meaning 'an action is now taking place', or 'the state resulting from an action already taken place continues to exist'. The latter meaning is more common among intransitive verbs which never take a direct object.

Examples:

a. Progressive:

Watakushi wa ji o kaite imasu.
'I'm writing characters.'
Heitai wa minna shoojuu o sooji-shite imasu.
'All soldiers are cleaning their rifles.'
Nani o shite imasu ka.
'What are you going?'
Ana o hotte imasu.
'I'm digging a hole.'

Watakushi wa aruite imasu.
'I'm walking.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

b. State of being:

Watakushi wa tatte imasu.
'I'm standing.'
Tanaka-san wa gakkoo ni kite imasu.
'Mr. Tanaka is at the school.'
Yamada-san wa heya ni haitte imasu.
'Mr. Yamada is in the room.'
Suzuki-san wa uchi ni kaette imasu.
'Mr. Suzuki is at home.'
Buraun-san wa Nihon ni itte imasu.
'Mr. Brown is in Japan.'
Kaneko-san wa Eigo o shitte imasu.
'Mr. Kaneko knows English.'
Mikami-san wa Jidoosha o motte imasu.
'Mr. Mikami has a car.'

The negative of the TE form plus imasu is the TE form plus imasen, e.g.,

Nani o shite imasu ka.
'What are you doing?'
Nanni mo shite imasen.
'I'm not doing anything.'

The syllable i of imasu or iru occurring after the TE form of verbs is often dropped in conversational speech, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Yamamoto-san wa Nihongo o Oshiete-masu.

'Mr. Yamamoto is teaching Japanese.'

Taroo wa e o kaite-ru.

'Taro is drawing a picture.'

6. TE form of verbs plus kudasai.

TE form of verbs occurs also before kudasai, and the resulting phrase is a polite request for services, e.g.,

Doozo kite kudasai.

'Please come.'

Oshiete kudasai.

'Please teach me.'

Katte kudasai.

'Please buy it.'

Shite kudasai.

'Please do it.'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. On the basis of the following table, ask and then answer how old each of the persons indicated is:

Name	Age	Name	Age
Taro	25	Hanako	23
Jiro	20	Masako	17
Saburo	9	Yoshiko	7

2. Politely request your instructor to teach you:

   a. how to teach English.

   b. how to clean your rifle.

   c. how to throw a hand grenade.

   d. how to build a foxhole.

   e. how to handle a recoilless rifle.

3. Change each of the following informal statements to the corresponding formal 'suggestion' sentence meaning 'shall we do so-and-so?', and then answer it by saying 'let's do so-and-so'.

   a. Kaeru.

   b. Achira e iku.

   c. Kono hon o kau.

   d. Naka ni hairu.

   e. Aruku.

   f. Mado o shimeru.

   g. Uchi ni iru.

   h. Heya no sooji o suru.

   i. Ashita kuru.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

j. Nani ka taberu.

4. Change each of the following informal statements to the corresponding formal 'offer' sentence meaning 'shall I do so-and-so?' and answer it by saying 'please':

   a. Mado o akeru.

   b. Tanaka-san ni iu.

   c. Hon o tsukue no ue ni oku.

   d. Zubon-shita o arau.

   e. Shoojuu no teire o suru.

5. Change each of the following informal non-past sentences to the corresponding formal 'progressive' sentence meaning 'an action is now taking place':

   a. Seito-tachi wa Nihongo o narau.

   b. Sensei wa hohei no buki ni tsuite oshieru.

   c. Hei wa jibun no shatsu o sentaku-suru.

   d. Taroo wa terebi o miru.

   e. Ano hito wa ana o horu.

   f. Ittoo-gunsoo ga teryuudan no nage-kata ni tsuite setsumei-suru.

   g. Guriin-san wa Nihongo de hanasu.

   h. Sam-mei ijoo no gunjin ga hakugekihoo o soosa-suru.

   i. Yamane-san wa jibun de kakko-entai o horu.

   j. Tanaka-san wa rajio o kiku.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

6. Change each of the following formal past sentences to the corresponding 'state-of-being' sentence meaning 'the state resulting from an action already taken place continues to exist':

   a. Sumisu-san wa Nihon e ikimashita.

   b. Sensei wa kyooshitsu no mae ni tachimashita.

   c. Seito wa moo uchi ni kaerimashita.

   d. Yamada-san wa jimushitsu ni hairimashita.

   e. Tanaka-san wa Amerika ni kimashita.

7. Politely request your friend:

   a. to stand up.

   b. to sit down.

   c. to go to the blackboard.

   d. to draw a picture of a hand grenade on the blackboard.

   e. to come back to his seat.

8. Tell your commanding officer that you will:

   a. go to the firing range and the training field.

   b. teach soldiers how to dig up mines.

   c. watch the training.

Lesson 20

A. Perception Drill.

1.	tenken	inspection
	tenken o suru or tenken-suru	inspect (v.t.)
a.	Chuutai-choo wa nani o tenken-shimasu ka.	What does the company commander inspect?
	shindai	bed
	shibutsu	personal effects
	shibutsu-bako	footlocker
b.	Shindai ya shibutsu-bako no naka o tenken-shimasu.	He inspects such things as beds and the inside of footlockers.
2.	benjo	latrine, toilet
	yokushitsu or furoba	bathroom
a.	Benjo ya yokushitsu wa dare ga sooji-shimasu ka.	Who cleans latrines, bathrooms and such?
	kawaru-gawaru	in rotation, alternately
b.	Hei ga kawaru-gawaru shimasu.	Soldiers do in rotation.
3.	tabemono	food
	ryoori	cooking
	ryoori o suru or ryoori-suru	cook (v.t.), prepare food
a.	Tabemono wa doko de ryoori-shimasu ka.	Where do they prepare food?
	suijiba or daidokoro	kitchen
b.	Suijiba de shimasu.	They prepare in the kitchen.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	c.	Doko de tabemasu ka.	Where do they eat?
		shokudoo	mess-hall, dining-room, dining-hall
	d.	Shokudoo de tabemasu	They eat in the mess-hall.
4.		koto	thing (intangible); word, phrase, sentence or expression (when reference is to speech); fact or act
	a.	Yokushitsu to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.	What do you mean by (the word) YOKUSHITSU?
	b.	Furoba no koto desu.	We mean (the word) FUROBA.
		mi	body, person
		mawari	surroundings
		mi no mawari	one's surroundings
		mono	thing (tangible)
		mi no mawari no mono	personal effects
	c.	Shibutsu to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.	What does (the expression) SHIBUTSU mean?
	d.	Mi no mawari no mono no koto desu.	It means personal effects.
5.		shite oku	do (in advance), do (in preparation), do something (for later use)
	a.	Tenken no mae ni heitachi wa nani o shite okimasu ka.	What do the soldiers do (in advance) before the inspection?

Lesson 20

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	migaku	informal equivalent of migakimasu 'polish' (v.t.)
b.	Kutsu o migaite okimasu.	They polish their shoes (in advance).
6.	kirei	clean, pretty, beautiful, neat
	kirei na	clean, pretty, beautiful, neat (NA adj.)
	kirei ni	cleanly, beautifully, neatly
	naraberu	informal equivalent of narabemasu 'arrange, display' (v.t.)
a.	Shibutsu-bako no naka ni hifuku o kirei ni narabete okimasu.	They arrange their clothes neatly in their footlockers.
b.	Benjo mo kirei ni sooji-shite okimasu.	They also clean latrines (in advance).
7.	mae	previous, before, front
	ban	evening, night
	mae no ban	previous night
	ni	at, in (point of time)
	ban ni	in the evening
a.	Tenken no toki ni, tatemono mo mimasu ka.	Do they look at the building at the time of inspection?
b.	Hai. Desu kara, mae no ban ni, kirei ni sooji o shite okimasu.	Yes. So they clean it beautifully the previous night (in advance).

Lesson 20

A. Perception Drill, continued.

8.		naru	informal equivalent of *narimasu* 'become, turn, get' (v.i.)
		--- ni naru	become so-and-so
	a.	Tanaka-san wa *nani ni narimashita* ka.	What has Mr. Tanaka become?
	b.	*Sensei* *ni* *narimashita*.	He has become a teacher.
9.		ookii	big, large
		ookiku naru	become big, get big
		chiisai	small, little
		chiisaku naru	become small, get small
		warui	bad
		waruku naru	become bad, get bad (or worse)
		yoi	good
		yoku naru	become good, get better
	a.	*Samuku* *narimashita* ne.	It has become cold, hasn't it?
	b.	Hai, taihen *samuku narimashita*.	Yes, it has become very cold.
10.		to	particle meaning 'if *or* when'
	a.	Mado o *akeru* *to*, samuku *narimasu*.	If you open the window, it'll get cold.

Lesson 20

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Sentaku-suru to, kirei ni narimasu.	If you wash it, it'll get clean.
c.	Ii to, kaimasu ga.	If it's good, I'll buy, but ---- .
d.	Ammari takai to, kaimasen.	If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.
	kitanai	dirty, is dirty (I-adj.)
	byooki	sickness, disease, sick, ill
e.	Shokudoo ga kitanai to, hei ga byooki ni narimasu.	If mess-halls are dirty, soldiers will get sick.
	eisei	health, sanitation, hygiene
	eisei-joo	from the standpoint of health
f.	Suijiba nado ga kitanai to, eisei-joo warui desu.	If such places as kitchen are dirty, they are bad from the standpoint of health.
11.	tabemasu	eat
	ikimasu	go
a.	Tabete ikimasu.	I'll eat and go.
b.	Tabete ikimashita.	I went after eating.
	ikimasu	go
	naraimasu	learn
c.	Nihon e itte, naraimasu.	I'll go to Japan and learn it.
d.	Nihon e itte, naraimashita.	I learned it after going to Japan.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		kimasu	come
		tenken-shimasu	inspect
	e.	Chuutai-choo ga kite, tenken-shimasu.	The company commander will come and inspect.
	f.	Chuutai-choo ga kite, tenken-shimashita.	The company commander came and inspected.
12.		dake	only
	a.	Nani o kaimashita ka.	What did you buy?
	b.	Booshi dake kaimashita.	I bought only a hat. or I only bought a hat.
	c.	Dare ga kimasu ka.	Who is coming?
	d.	Tanaka-san dake kimasu.	Mr. Tanaka is the only one who is coming. (Lit: Only Mr. Tanaka is coming.)
	e.	Anata-tachi wa minna ikimasu ka.	Are you all going?
	f.	Iie, watakushi dake ikimasu.	No, I'm the only one who is going. (Lit: No, only I'm going.)
	g.	Doko ni arimasu ka.	Where is it?
	h.	Tookyoo ni dake arimasu.	It's only in Tokyo.
	i.	Doko e ikimashita ka.	Where did you go?
	j.	Nihon e dake ikimashita.	I went only to Japan. or I only went to Japan.
13.		taisetsu	important
		taisetsu na	important (NA adj.)

Lesson 20

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Donna tokoro ga taisetsu desu ka.	What sort of place is important?
b.	Shokudoo ga taihen taisetsu na tokoro desu.	A mess-hall is a very important place.
c.	Dare no shibutsu-bako ga ichi-ban kirei deshita ka.	Whose footlocker was the cleanest?
d.	Tanaka-san no ga ichi-ban kirei na shibutsu-bako deshita.	Mr. Tanaka's was the cleanest footlocker.

Lesson 20

B. Dialogue.

Inspection.

1. A: Kyoo wa heisha no tenken ga arimasu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Chuutai-choo ga kite, heisha, hifuku nado no tenken o shimasu.

2. A: Heisha no tenken no toki ni wa, shindai nado mo mimasu ka.

   B: Mochiron soo desu. Desu kara, hifuku mo shibutsubako no naka ni kirei ni narabete okimasu.

3. A: Kutsu mo kirei ni migaite okimasu ka.

   B: Soo desu.

4. A: Hei wa tenken no toki ni wa doko ni imasu ka.

   B: Shindai no soba ni tatte imasu.

5. A: Heisha de wa chuutai-choo wa mi no mawari no mono dake tenken-shimasu ka.

   B: Soo desu. Hoka no soobi wa soto de tenken-shimasu.

6. A: Tatemono mo sono toki ni tenken-shimasu ka.

   B: Sono toki ni naka o mimasu. Desu kara, hei wa mae no ban ni kirei ni sooji o shite okimasu.

7. A: Benjo ya yokushitsu mo mimasu ka.

   B: Yokushitsu to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

8. A: Furo-ba no koto desu.

   B: Mochiron, sonna tokoro mo mimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Sonna tokoro wa dare ga sooji-shimasu ka.

B: Hei ga kawaru-gawaru shimasu.

10. A: Shokudoo no tenken mo arimasu ka.

B: Ee, shokudoo wa taihen taisetsu na tokoro desu kara.

11. A: Suijiba ya shokudoo nado ga kitanai to, hei ga byooki ni narimasu ne.

B: Sono suijiba to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

12. A: Daidokoro no koto desu.

B: Aa, soo desu ka. Soko de tabemono o ryoori-shimasu kara, itsumo kirei ni shite okimasu. Benjo, furoba, suijiba nado ga kitanai to, eiseijoo warui desu.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

1. A: There'll be an inspection of barracks today. Isn't that right?

   B: That's right. The company commander will come and inspect such things as barracks and clothings.

2. A: At the time of inspection of barracks, will he look at such things as beds?

   B: Of course. So they arrange their clothes neatly in their footlockers in advance, too.

3. A: Do they also polish their shoes in advance?

   B: That's right.

4. A: Where will the soldiers be at the time of inspection?

   B: They will be standing by their beds.

5. A: Will the company commander inspect only personal effects in the barracks?

   B: That's right. He'll inspect other equipment outside.

6. A: Will he then inspect the buildings, too?

   B: He'll look at the inside. So the soldiers clean it the previous night.

7. A: Will he look at the latrines, bathrooms, (YOKUSHITSU) and such?

   B: What do you mean by (the word) YOKUSHITSU?

8. A: We mean (the word) FUROBA (bathrooms).

   B: Of course, he'll look at such places, too.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Who cleans such places?

B: The soldiers do in rotation.

10. A: Do they have an inspection of mess-halls?

B: Yes, because mess-halls are very important places.

11. A: If kitchens (SUIJIBA), mess-halls and such places are dirty, soldiers will become sick, won't they?

B: What does (the word) SUIJIBA mean?

12. A: It means (the word) 'kitchen'.

B: Oh, I see. Since they prepare food there, they always keep the place clean. If such places as latrine, bathroom, and kitchen are dirty, they are bad from the standpoint of health.

Lesson 20

D. Grammar Notes.

1. koto.

The word koto means several different things. It means 'thing' that's intangible. It is sometimes equivalent to 'word, phrase, sentence, or expression' when reference is made only to speech, e.g.,

Yokushitsu to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.
'What does (the word) YOKUSHITSU mean?'
or
'What do you mean by (the word) 'YOKUSHITSU'?'

Furoba no koto desu.
'We mean FUROBA (bathroom).'
or
'It means FUROBA (bathroom).'

Koto also means 'act, fact'. Such examples will be introduced later in the course. Note, however, that the word koto like n or no is always preceded by a modifier.

2. TE form of verbs plus okimasu.

The verb okimasu (or oku) with the meaning 'put, place' was introduced previously. Occurring after the TE form of a verb, okimasu somewhat loses its basic meaning but adds to the verb the meaning 'do something in advance', 'do something in preparation', or 'do something for later use or reference', e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tabako o takusan katte okimashita.

'I (have) bought lots of cigarettes (for later use).'

Pen wa tsukue no ue ni oite okimashita.

'I (have) put the pen on the desk (for future use).'

(The phrase oite okimashita is often contracted to oitokimashita.)

Kutsu wa kirei ni migaite okimasu.

'They polish their shoes cleanly (in advance, in preparation for something, or for later use).'

3. NA adjectives or copula nouns:

Nouns are modified in several different ways. Some of those modifiers were already introduced in previous lessons:

a. I adjectives:

ookii tatemono	'large building'
kitanai tokoro	'dirty place'
muzukashii shitsumon	'difficult question'
atsui mono	'hot thing'

b. NO adjectives:

Yokohama no gakkoo	'schools in Yokohama'
chairo no kaban	'brown briefcase'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nihongo no sensei	'Japanese language teacher'
anata no tomodachi	'your friend'

c. Pre-nouns:

kono hon	'this book'
aru seito	'certain student'
donna iro	'what color?'
onaji tokoro	'same place'

In this lesson, *na* instead of *no* occurs between two nouns. The noun before *na* belongs to a special class of nouns called 'copula nouns'. The copula noun plus *na* is used to describe the second noun that follows it. The copula nouns describe qualities, and they may also occur after any form of the copula *desu*, but they do not normally occur as the subject of a sentence. Since not all 'quality' words are NA adjectives or copula nouns, they must be memorized as they are introduced.

Examples:

Kono hon wa *taisetsu* *desu*.

'This book is important.'

Kore wa *taisetsu na* *hon* desu.

'This is an important book.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kono shokudoo wa kirei desu.

'This mess-hall is clean.'

Kore wa kirei na shokudoo desu.

'This is a clean mess-hall.'

Occurring before ni, the copular nouns are used as adverbs, e.g.,

Shokudoo o kirei ni sooji-shimashita.

'We cleaned the mess-hall beautifully.'

Tsukue no ue ni hon o kirei ni narabete kudasai.

'Please arrange the books neatly on the desk.'

4. ni.

The particle ni also indicates the time at which something takes place, e.g.,

Hima no toki ni kite kudasai.

'Please come when you are free.'

(Lit: At your free time, please come.)

Mae no ban ni sooji-shimasu.

'We clean it the previous night.'

More examples of time expressions will be given in subsequent lessons.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

5. *narimasu*.

The word *narimasu* is the formal equivalent of the intransitive verb *naru*, and it corresponds to the English copulative verb 'become'.

Any form of *naru* is normally preceded by the phrase 'noun plus *ni*' or the adverbial form of an I-adjective. The adverbial form of I-adjectives ends in the syllable *ku* in place of the syllable *i*.

Examples:

a. Noun plus *ni* before *naru*.

Tanaka-san wa *byooki ni* *narimashita*.

'Mr. Tanaka became sick.'

Yamada-san wa *sensei ni* *narimashita*.

'Mr. Yamada became a teacher.'

b. Adverbial form of I-adjectives plus *naru*.

Kao ga *akaku* *narimashita*.

'My face became red.'
or
'My face turned red.'

Te ga *kitanaku* *narimashita*.

'My hands became dirty.'

6. *to*.

Occurring after the non-past informal or basic form of the copula, verbs, and I-adjectives, the particle

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

to means 'if, when, whenever' to express a condition for the succeeding statement. The clause preceding to is, therefore, a dependent clause, and the clause that follows it is an independent or main clause. In general, the dependent clause precedes the main clause in Japanese.

Examples:

a. to after the copula da:

Ashita da to, iku koto ga dekiru deshoo.

'If it's tomorrow, I think I can go.'

Byooki da to, nanni mo dekimasen.

'If one is sick, he can't do anything.'

b. to after verbs:

Sonna mono o taberu to, byooki ni narimasu.

'If you eat such things as that, you'll get sick.'

Aruku to, ichi-jikan gurai kakaru deshoo.

'If you walk, it'll probably take one hour.'

c. to after I-adjectives:

Ammari takai to, kau koto ga dekimasen.

'If it's too expensive, I won't be able to buy it.'

Suijiba ga kitanai to, hei ga byooki ni narimasu.

'If the kitchen is dirty, soldiers will become sick.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The particle to may also occur after desu and the -masu form of verbs in very polite speech.

7. TE form of verbs '--- and'.

The TE form of verbs is also used alone medially at the end of a clause within a compound sentence to mean 'do such-and-such thing and', 'did such-and-such thing and', or 'will do such-and-such thing and'. Thus the time and mode of the clause are normally governed by the inflected form occurring at the end of the compound sentence.

Examples:

> Chuutai-choo ga kite, shindai ya hifuku nado no tenken o shimasu.
>
> 'The company commander comes and inspects such things as beds and clothings.'
>
> Yokohama e itte, iroiro no mono o kaimashita.
>
> 'I went to Yokohama and bought different things.'
>
> Tanaka-san wa uchi e kaette, nani ka tabete, terebi o miru deshoo.
>
> 'I think Mr. Tanaka will go home, eat something, and watch the television.'

Note that actions are stated in order of their occurrences.

The TE form of verbs occurring medially in sentences has other uses, and these will be introduced in subsequent lessons.

8. *dake*.

Dake is a particle meaning 'only'. Occurring after a noun or pronoun, *dake* replaces the particle *o*, *ga*, or *wa*; but if the noun or pronoun is followed by some particle other than *o*, *ga*, or *wa*, then both the particle and *dake* occur, e.g.,

Nani *o* moraimashita ka.
'What did you receive?'
Booshi *dake* moraimashita.
'I only received a hat.'

Uchi ni dare *ga* imasu ka.
'Who is (at) home?'
Taroo *dake* imasu.
'Taro is the only one who is at home.'
or
'Only Taro is at home.'

Dare *ni* iimashita ka.
'Whom did you tell?'
Yamada-san *ni* *dake* iimashita.
'I only told Mr. Yamada.'

Doko *de* miru koto ga dekimasu ka.
'Where can you see it?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tookyoo de dake miru koto ga dekimasu.

'You only can see it in Tokyo.'

Dake also occurs as a noun with the meaning 'as much as'. This use will be dealt with in a subsequent lesson.

Lesson 20

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Ask and then answer what each of the following expressions means using the word koto:

    a. yokushitsu

    b. suijiba

    c. shuryuudan

    d. shibutsu

    e. heishu

    f. chuutai-choo

    g. kashikan

    h. shokki

2. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'somebody did such-and-such thing' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'somebody did such-and-such thing in advance, in preparation, or for later use':

    a. Hifuku o shibutsu-bako no naka ni narabemashita.

    b. Kutsu o migakimashita.

    c. Sensei ni hanashimashita.

    d. Heya no sooji o shimashita.

    e. Shatsu o araimashita.

    f. Kakko-entai o tsukurimashita.

    g. Tabemono o takusan kaimashita.

    h. Gumpuku wa dorai-kuriiningu ni dashimashita.

    i. Ano hon wa tsukue no ue ni okimashita.

    j. Sono kata no onamae o kakimashita.

3. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'X is Y' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'X became Y':

    a. Tanaka-san wa byooki desu.

    b. Yamada-san wa tai-i desu.

    c. Shokudoo wa kirei desu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

d. Yamane-san wa heitai desu.

e. Taroo wa ookii desu.

f. Kono sagyoofuku wa kitanai desu.

g. Taihen atsui desu.

h. Kanari tooi desu.

4. Given below are pairs of sentences. The first sentence in each pair is a condition for the second sentence. Combine the two sentences into a complex sentence, making whatever changes are necessary:

a. (1) Romaji desu.

(2) Kaku koto ga dekimasu.

b. (1) Kyoo desu.

(2) Ii desu.

c. (1) Kutsu o migakimasu.

(2) Kirei ni narimasu.

d. (1) Takai mono o kaimasu.

(2) Okane ga takusan kakarimasu.

e. (1) Seetaa o araimasu.

(2) Chiisaku narimasu.

f. (1) Soto ni demasu.

(2) Yoku miru koto ga dekimasu.

B. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

g. (1) Mado o akemasu.
   (2) Samuku narimasu.

h. (1) Daidokoro ga kitanai desu.
   (2) Byooki ni narimasu.

i. (1) Yasui desu.
   (2) Kau koto ga dekimasu.

j. (1) Muzukashii desu.
   (2) Seito ni wakarimasen.

k. (1) Michi ga warui desu.
   (2) Ikimasen.

5. Tell your friend that:

   a. the flowers are beautiful.
   b. this is very important.
   c. you can draw pictures beautifully.
   d. you put important things in your footlocker.
   e. a clean kitchen is important from the standpoint of health.
   f. you will arrange the books neatly on the desk.

6. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessery, combine the two sentences of each pair into a compound sentence:

   a. (1) Daidokoro de ryoori-shimashita.
      (2) Shokudoo de tabemashita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

b. (1) Tomodachi no uchi e ikimasu.
(2) Nani ka tabemasu.

c. (1) Kutsu o migakimasu.
(2) Kutsushita o araimasu.

d. (1) Hanashi-kata o naraimasu.
(2) Kaki-kata o naraimasu.

e. (1) Nani ka tabemasu.
(2) Gakkoo e ikimasu.

f. (1) E o narabemasu.
(2) Mite kudasai.

g. (1) Kakko-entai o horimasu.
(2) Naka ni hairimasu.

h. (1) Kyooshitsu o sooji shimasu.
(2) Uchi e kaerimasu.

i. (1) Nihongo o naraimasu.
(2) Nihon e ikinasai.

j. (1) Sensei ni narimasu.
(2) Nihongo o oshiemasu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

7. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. Mr. Tanaka is the only one who knows it.

   b. I bought but a pair of shoes.

   c. You can buy it only at Ginza.

   d. I told Mr. Tanaka only.

   e. You can't go to Japan only by car.

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill.

1.		asa	morning
		-han	meal (suffix)
		asa-han	breakfast
		ban	evening, night
		kon-	this (prefix, of time)
		kom-ban	this evening, tonight
		yuu-	evening (prefix)
		yuu-han	supper
		kesa	this morning
	a.	Kesa asa-han o tabemasen deshita.	I didn't eat breafast this morning.
	b.	Kom-ban wa yuu-han o takusan tabemasu.	I'll eat a lot of supper tonight.
2.		okiru	informal equivalent of okimasu 'get up, rise' (v.i.)
		ha	tooth
		hige	beard, whiskers
		soru	informal equivalent of sorimasu 'shave' (v.t.)
	a.	Asa okite, nani o shimasu ka.	What do you do after you get up in the morning?
	b.	Ha o migaite, hige o sorimasu.	I brush my teeth and shave.
3.		koogun	march
		koogun-suru	march (v.i.)

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	a.	Ashita wa koogun desu.	We'll march tomorrow.
	b.	Go-mairu gurai koogun-shimasu.	We'll march about 5 miles.
4.		kyori	distance
	a.	Koko kara asuko made, kyori wa dono gurai desu ka.	What's the approximate distance from here to there?
	b.	Koko kara asuko made no kyori wa roku-mairu gurai desu.	The distance from here to there is about 6 miles.
5.		roei	bivouac, bivouacking
		roei-suru	bivouac (v.i.)
		-chuu or juu	during, throughout (suffix)
		roei-chuu	during the bivouac
		ichi-jikan-juu	throughout the hour, during the whole hour
		keikai	security, safeguarding
		keikai-suru	secure, safeguard (v.t.)
		tento	tent
		haru	informal equivalent of harimasu 'spread, stretch' (v.t.)
		neru	informal equivalent of nemasu 'sleep, lie down' (v.i.)
	a.	Roei-chuu wa, tento o hatte, nemasu.	During the bivouac, we put up tents and sleep.

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	kojin	individual, personal
	kojin-soobi	individual equipment
b.	Tento wa kojin-soobi desu.	Tents are individual equipment.
c.	Koogun-chuu to roei-chuu ni wa keikai ga taisetsu desu.	The security is important during the march and the bivouac.
6.	awaseru	informal equivalent of awasemasu 'put together, unite' (v.t.)
a.	Te o awasete kudasai.	Please put your hands together.
b.	Futari no o awasete, hitotsu tsukurimasu.	You put together the parts (things) that belong to two men and make one.
7.	-ji	o'clock, hour (counter)
	rei	zero
	rei-ji	zero hours, 12 o'clock midnight
	ichi-ji	one o'clock, 0100 hours
	ni-ji	two o'clock 0200 hours
	san-ji	three o'clock, 0300 hours
	yo-ji	four o'clock, 0400 hours
	go-ji	five o'clock, 0500 hours

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	roku-ji	six o'clock, 0600 hours
	shichi-ji	seven o'clock, 0700 hours
	hachi-ji	eight o'clock, 0800 hours
	ku-ji	nine o'clock, 0900 hours
	juu-ji	ten o'clock, 1000 hours
	juuichi-ji	eleven o'clock 1100 hours
	juuni-ji	twelve o'clock, 1200 hours
	juuyo-ji	two o'clock p.m.; 1400 hours
	nijuu-yo-ji	twelve o'clock midnight, 2400 hours
	nan-ji	what time?
	-han	half (suffix)
	go-ji-han	5:30
	go-jikan-han	5½ hours
	nijuu-yo-ji-sei	2400-hour system
a.	Nan-ji ni okimashita ka.	What time did you get up?
b.	Go-ji-han ni okimashita.	I got up at 5:30.
8.	itsu	when? what time?
	goro	about (approximate point of time)

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	gozen	forenoon, a.m.
	gogo	afternoon, p.m.
a.	Itsu kimashita ka.	When did you come?
b.	Kinoo kimashita.	I came yesterday.
c.	Nan-ji goro kaerimasu ka.	About what time are you going to come home?
d.	Gogo ku-ji goro kaerimasu.	I'm coming home around 9 o'clock p.m.
9.	motte	TE form of motsu 'hold'
	motte kuru	bring (inanimate objects)
	motte iku	take (inanimate objects)
a.	Kaban o motte ikimashita.	I took the briefcase.
b.	Hon o motte kimashita.	I brought the book.
10.	-ka and -nichi	counter for the number of days
	ichi-nichi	1 day
	futsu-ka	2 days
	mik-ka	3 days
	yok-ka	4 days
	itsu-ka	5 days
	mui-ka	6 days
	nano-ka	7 days

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	yoo-ka	8 days
	kokono-ka	9 days
	too-ka	10 days
	nan-nichi	how many days?
a.	Ichi-nichi ni nan-do tabemasu ka.	How many times a day do you eat?
b.	Ichi-nichi ni san-do tabemasu.	I eat three times a day.
11.	de	particle indicating a condition or reason
	mokuteki	purpose, objective
a.	Nan no mokuteki de koko e kimashita ka.	With what purpose did you come here?
b.	Roei no mokuteki de kimashita.	We came here with the purpose of bivouacking.
c.	Hitori de ikimasu ka.	Are you going alone?
d.	Iie, futari de ikimasu.	No, two of us are going.
e.	Jibun de shimashita ka.	Did you do it yourself?
f.	Hai, jibun de shimashita.	Yes, I did it myself.
g.	Tanaka-san wa byooki de nete imasu.	Mr. Tanaka is sick in bed. (Lit: Mr. Tanaka is sleeping because of illness.)
h.	Tenken de isogashii desu.	We are busy due to an inspection.

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill, continued.

12.		tachimasu	stand up
		oshiemasu	teach
	a.	Watakushi wa tatte oshiemasu.	I teach standing.
		koogun-shimasu	march
		kimashita	came
	b.	Chuutai wa koogun-shite koko e kimashita.	The company came here marching.
		awasemasu	put together
		tsukurimasu	build, make
	c.	Tanaka-san no to watakushi no o awasete hitotsu tsukurimasu.	We make one by putting together Mr. Tanaka's and mine.
		akemasu	open
		nemasu	sleep, go to bed
	d.	Watakushi wa mado o akete nemasu.	I go to bed with the windows open.
13.		doo	how?, what?
	a.	Doo shimashita ka.	What did you do? or What happened?
	b.	Doo shimasu ka.	What are you going to do? or How are you going to do it? or How do you do it?
	c.	Doo shimashoo ka.	What shall we do? or What shall I do?

Lesson 21

A. Perception Drill, continued.

d. Doo shite?	Why? How?
e. Doo itashimashite.	You're welcome. or Don't mention it. or Not at all.

Lesson 21

B. Dialogue.

March and Bivouac.

1. A: Konnichi wa.

   B: Konnichi wa.

2. A: Anata wa kesa nan-ji ni okimashita ka.

   B: Go-ji mae ni okimashita. Sore kara, ha o migaite, kao o aratte, hige o sorimashita.

3. A: Asa-han wa nan-ji ni tabemashita ka.

   B: Go-ji han goro tabemashita.

4. A: Sore kara doo shimashimashita ka.

   B: Sore kara watakushi-tachi no chuutai wa koogunshite, koko e kimashita.

5. A: Chuutai no heisha kara koko made no kyori wa dono gurai desu ka.

   B: Go-mairu gurai desu.

6. A: Kanari no kyori desu ne.

   B: Ee, soo desu. Ni-jikan han no koogun desu.

7. A: Nan no mokuteki de, koko e kimashita ka.

   B: Roei desu.

8. A: Roei no toki ni wa tento o hatte neru n desu ka.

   B: Ee, soo desu. Keredomo, hoka ni mo roei no mokuteki ga arimasu. Roei-chuu no keikai nado wa taisetsu desu kara, sono kunren mo shimasu.

Lesson 21

B. Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Tento wa hei ga jibun de motte kuru no desu ka.

B: Soo desu. Tento wa kojin-soobi no hitotsu desu ga, futari no o awasete, hitotsu no tento o tsukurimasu. Desu kara, hitotsu no tento ni futari nemasu.

10. A: Komban wa nan-ji goro nemasu ka.

B: Juuhachi-ji goro yuu-han o tabete, nijuu-ji goro neru deshoo.

11. A: Juuhachi-ji to iu no wa itsu no koto desu ka.

B: Rei-ji kara juuni-ji made ga gozen de, juuni-ji kara nijuu-yo-ji made ga gogo desu kara, juuhachi-ji wa gogo roku-ji no koto desu.

12. A: Sore dewa ni-ji, san-ji nado wa ichi-nichi ni nido arimasu ga, nijuu-yo-ji-sei no toki ni wa, ichi-do dake desu ne.

B: Ee, soo desu.

Lesson 21

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Good afternoon.

   B: Good afternoon.

2. A: What time did you get up this morning?

   B: I got up before 5 o'clock. Then I brushed my teeth, washed my face, and shaved.

3. A: What time did you eat breakfast?

   B: I ate it around 5:30.

4. A: Then what did you do?

   B: Then our company came here marching.

5. A: What's the approximate distance from your company barracks to here?

   B: It's about 5 miles.

6. A: It's quite a distance, isn't it?

   B: Yes, that's right. It's a 2½ hour march.

7. A: With what purpose did you come here?

   B: Bivouac.

8. A: At the time of bivouacking, do you put up tents and sleep?

   B: Yes, that's right. But there are other objectives of bivouacking, too. Since the security during the bivouac is important, we conduct the training on that, too.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Do soldiers bring their tents themselves?

B: That's right. The tent is one of the individual equipment, but they put together the parts that belong to two men and make one tent. So two men sleep in one tent.

10. A: About what time are you going to sleep tonight?

B: We'll probably eat supper around 1800 hours and sleep around 2000 hours.

11. A: What time do you mean by 1800 hours?

B: From zero hours (midnight) till 1200 hours is the forenoon (a.m.) and from 1200 hours till 2400 hours is the afternoon (p.m.), so 1800 hours means 6:00 p.m.

12. A: Then, though we have such hours as 2:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock twice a day, in the 2400-hour system we have them only once, don't we?

B: Yes, that's right.

Lesson 21

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Noun plus particle plus *no* plus noun.

In 'noun plus particle plus *no* plus noun' constructions, the 'noun plus particle plus *no*' describes the noun that follows it, e.g.,

Nihon *kara* *no* tomodachi
'a friend from Japan'

koko kara asuko *made* no kyori
'the distance from here to there'

2. *-ji*.

-Ji is the counter to count o'clocks. It is combined with the Chinese series of numerals with a few exceptions* like the counter *-jikan* 'number of hours', e.g.,

ichi-ji	'1 o'clock'	ku-ji	'9 o'clock'
ni-ji	'2 o'clock'	juu-ji	'10 o'clock'
san-ji	'3 o'clock'	juuichi-ji	'11 o'clock'
*yo-ji	'4 o'clock'	juuni-ji	'12 o'clock'
go-ji	'5 o'clock'	*juuyo-ji	'1400 hours'
roku-ji	'6 o'clock'	*nijuu-yo-ji	'2400 hours'
shichi-ji	'7 o'clock'	nan-ji	'what time?'
hachi-ji	'8 o'clock'	go-ji-han	'5:30'

Lesson 21

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

-Fun 'minutes' was previously introduced in Lesson 14. In telling time in Japanese, -fun 'minutes' always follows -ji 'o'clock', and -mae 'before' or -sugi 'after' may follow -fun 'minutes', e.g.,

ku-ji juugo-fun or ku-ji juugo-fun-sugi	'9:15'
ku-ji juugo-fun-mae	'15 minutes before 9 o'clock' or 'a quarter to 9'

2. Time expressions.

The time at which something happens is indicated by the particle ni as was introduced in the preceding lesson. However there are those time expressions which do not take the particle ni. In general, ni occurs after hours of the day, days of the week, months and years; but does not occur after such words as 'today, yesterday, tomorrow, this morning, tonight'.

Examples:

Kesa nan-ji ni okimashita ka.

'What time did you get up this morning.'

Roku-ji ni okimashita.

'I got up at 6:00.'

In Japanese gozen 'a.m.' and gogo 'p.m.' precede -ji 'o'clock', e.g.,

3

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

gozen hachi-ji	8:00 a.m.
gogo go-ji	5:00 p.m.

3. goro.

The particle goro occurs after time expressions with the meaning 'the approximate time at which something happens'. Goro may occur with or without the particle ni without any difference of meaning.

Examples:

Nan-ji goro kaerimasu ka.
or
Nan-ji goro ni kaerimasu ka.
'About what time are you coming back?'

Go-ji goro kaerimasu.
or
Go-ji goro ni kaerimasu.
'I'll be back around 5 o'clock.'

Itsu goro kimasu ka.
'About when are you coming?'
Ashita goro kimasu.
'I'm coming about tomorrow.'

4. -chuu.

-Chuu is a suffix which occurs after nouns with the meaning 'during, throughout'. After certain nouns, -juu instead of -chuu occurs, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

gozen-chuu	'during the morning'
roei-chuu	'during the bivouac'
keikai-chuu	'during the security'
ichi-jikan-juu	'throughout the hour'
ichi-nichi-juu	'throughout the day, all day long'

5. -ka and -nichi.

-Ka and -nichi are the counters for counting the number of days or days of the month. But they are not used interchangeably. Note the irregular forms* in the following list:

ichi-nichi	'one day'	
tsuitachi		'the first of the month'
*futsu-ka	'2 days' or 'the 2nd'	
*mik-ka	'3 days' or 'the 3rd'	
*yok-ka	'4 days' or 'the 4th'	
itsu-ka	'5 days' or 'the 5th'	
*mui-ka	'6 days' or 'the 6th'	
*nano-ka	'7 days' or 'the 7th'	
*yoo-ka	'8 days' or 'the 8th'	
kokono-ka	'9 days' or 'the 9th'	
too-ka	'10 days' or 'the 10th'	
juuichi-nichi	'11 days' or 'the 11th'	

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

juuni-nichi	'12 days' or 'the 12th day'
juusan-nichi	'13 days' or 'the 13th'
*juuyok-ka	'14 days' or 'the 14th'
juugo-nichi	'15 days' or 'the 15th'
juuroku-nichi	'16 days' or 'the 16th'
juushichi-nichi	'17 days' or 'the 17th'
juuhachi-nichi	'18 days' or 'the 18th'
juuku-nichi	'19 days' or 'the 19th'
*hatsu-ka	'20 days' or 'the 20th'
nijuu ichi-nichi	'21 days' or 'the 21st'
nijuu ni-nichi	'22 days' or 'the 22nd'
nijuu san-nichi	'23 days' or 'the 23rd'
*nijuu yok-ka	'24 days' or 'the 24th'
nijuu go-nichi	'25 days' or 'the 25th'
nijuu roku-nichi	'26 days' or 'the 26th'
nijuu shichi-nichi	'27 days' or 'the 27th'
nijuu hachi-nichi	'28 days' or 'the 28th'
nijuu ku-nichi	'29 days' or 'the 29th'
sanjuu-nichi	'30 days' or 'the 30th'
sanjuu ichi-nichi	'31 days' or 'the 31st'
nan-nichi	'how many days?' or 'what date?'
iku-nichi	'how many days?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

6. de.

Occurring after a noun, the particle de also indicates that the noun is the reason why or the condition in which an action takes place, e.g.,

Byooki de nete imasu.

'He is sick in bed.'
(Lit: He is sleeping because of sickness.)

Kiso-kunren de mainichi isogashii desu.

'I'm very busy everyday due to the basic training.'

Yooji de Tookyoo e ikimasu.

'I'm going to Tokyo on account of a business.'

Roei no mokuteki de koko e kimashita.

'We came here with the purpose of bivouacking.'

Hitori de sooji-shimashita.

'I cleaned it alone.'

Jibun de motte ikimasu.

'I'll take it myself.'

7. Adverbial use of the TE form of verbs.

Occurring medially, the TE form of a verb is used also as an adverb to describe how or in what manner the action of the succeeding sentence takes place, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Aruite kimashita.

'I walked.'
(Lit: I came by walking.)

Tatte oshiete kudasai.

'Please teach standing.'

Motte ikimasu.

'I'll take it.'
(Lit: I go by holding it.)

Motte kimashita.

'I brought it.'
(Lit: I came by holding it.)

Watakushi wa kiite naraimasu.

'I learn by listening.'

Lesson 21

B. Exercises and Conversation.

1. On the basis of the following table, ask and then answer when each person will do each of the actions indicated:

	will get up	will eat breakfast	will go to school	will come home
Tanaka	at 6:00	around 7:20	at 7:30	about 5:00
Yamada	at 7:00	around 7:45	at 8:00	about 4:30
Kato	at 5:30	around 6:10	before 8:00	about 4:00
Ikeda	at 7:15	around 8:00	at 9:00	about 3:00

2. Given below are pairs of sentences. Using the first sentence of each adverbially and making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences:

a. (1) Arukimasu.

(2) Kaerimasu.

b. (1) Tachimasu.

(2) Tabemasu.

c. (1) Koogun-shimasu.

(2) Kimashita.

d. (1) Mimasu.

(2) Naraimasu.

B. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. (1) Kakimasu.

(2) Kanji o oshiemasu.

f. (1) Mado o shimemasu.

(2) Nemasu.

g. (1) Kaimasu.

(2) Motte kimasu.

h. (1) Yoku setsumei-shimasu.

(2) Oshiemasu.

i. (1) Ana o horimasu.

(2) Kakko-entai o tsukurimasu.

j. (1) Nemasu.

(2) Terebi o mimasu.

3. Tell your friend that you will:

a. get up at 5:00 tomorrow.

b. eat breakfast around 5:30.

c. go to the firing range at 7:00.

d. return to the barracks at 12:00.

e. go to school at 1:00 p.m.

f. come back from school around 1700 hours.

g. eat supper at 1800 hours.

Lesson 21

B. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

4. Tell your company commander that:
   - a. you teach four hours a day.
   - b. you go to Tokyo once every ten days.
   - c. you eat only twice a day.
   - d. you polish your shoes at least once a day.
   - e. you walk at least two miles a day.
   - f. you taught how to throw hand grenades all day long yesterday.
   - g. you will be home all morning tomorrow.

5. Take turns asking and answering what you and your friend did yesterday and will do tomorrow.

6. Using formal style, tell your maid:
   - a. to get up around 6:00 tomorrow morning.
   - b. to clean the kitchen.
   - c. to cook your breakfast around 7:30.
   - d. to wash your socks.
   - e. to take the box to Mr. Tanaka during the morning.
   - f. to bring back your hat from his home.

Lesson 22

A. Perception Drill.

1.	yasumi	holiday, rest, recess, vacation
	kyuujitsu	holiday, off-day
a.	Kyoo wa yasumi desu ka.	Is today a holiday?
b.	Hai, kyoo wa kyuujitsu desu.	Yes, today is a holiday.
2.	supootsu	sport
	undoo	exercise (physical)
	undoo-suru	exercise (v.i.)
	yakyuu	baseball (game)
	basuketto-booru	basketball
	pimpon	ping-pong
	gorufu	golf
	yaru	informal equivalent of yarimasu 'do, play' (v.t.)
a.	Donna undoo o yarimasu ka.	What sort of exercise do you do?
b.	Gorufu o yarimasu.	I play golf.
3.	eiga	movie, motion picture
	eiga-kan	movie theater
	miseru	informal equivalent of misemasu 'show' (v.t.)
a.	Sono eiga-kan de wa donna eiga o misemasu ka.	What sorts of movies do they show at that theater?

Lesson 22

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Itsumo ii eiga o misemasu.	They always show good movies.
4.	osoi	late, slow (I-adj.)
	osoku	late (adv.)
	hayai	early, fast (I-adj.)
	hayaku	early, fast (adv.)
	yasui	cheap, inexpensive (I-adj.)
	yasuku	cheap, cheaply (adv.)
	kibishii	stringent, hard, or strict, rigid, rigorous (I-adj.)
	kibishiku	stringently, hard, or strictly, rigidly, rigorously (adv.)
a.	Asa hayaku okimasu.	I get up early in the morning.
	yoru	night, evening
b.	Yoru osoku nemasu.	I go to bed late at night.
c.	Taihen yasuku kaimashita.	I bought it very cheap.
d.	Hei o kibishiku kunren shimasu.	They train the soldiers hard.
5.	goraku	recreation
	shitsu	room
	goraku-shitsu	recreation room, day room

Lesson 22

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Chuutai ni wa goraku-shitsu ga arimasu ka.	Is there a day room in the company?
b.	Hai, arimasu.	Yes, there is.
6.	baiten	store
a.	Rikugun no baiten wa nan to iimasu ka.	What is the army store called?
b.	PX to iimasu.	It's called PX.
7.	mieru	informal equivalent of miemasu 'is visible' (v.i.)
a.	Koko kara heisha ga miemasu ka.	Can you see the barracks from here?
b.	Iie, koko kara heisha wa miemasen.	No, I can't see the barracks from here.
8.	dekakeru	informal equivalent of dekakemasu 'go out, start off' (v.i.)
a.	Kondo no yasumi ni wa doko e dekakemasu ka.	Where will you go out on the next holiday?
b.	Oosaka e dekakemasu.	I'll set off for Osaka.
9.	demo	but, yet
a.	Ii otenki desu ne.	What a beautiful day!
b.	Demo, isogashii desu kara, doko e mo deru koto ga dekimasen.	Yet, I'm busy, so I can't go out anywhere.

Lesson 22

A. Perception Drill, continued.

10.		ni	for the purpose of
		mimasu	see, look at
	a.	Komban wa eiga o mi ni ikimasu.	I'll go to see a movie tonight.
	b.	Komban wa eiga ni ikimasu.	I'll go to a movie tonight.
		yarimasu	do, play
	c.	Gogo wa gorufu o yari ni dekakemasu.	I'll go out to play golf in the afternoon.
	d.	Gogo wa gorufu ni ikimasu.	I'll go out golfing in the afternoon.
		tabemasu	eat
	e.	Tanaka-san wa yuuhan o tabe ni kaerimashita.	Mr. Tanaka went home to eat supper.
	f.	Tanaka-san wa yuuhan ni kaerimashita.	Mr. Tanaka went home for supper.
11.		gorufu dake	only golf
		gorufu shika (+ negative)	nothing but golf, only golf
	a.	Donna undoo o shimasu ka.	What sort of exercise do you do?
	b.	Gorufu dake yarimasu.	I play only golf.
	c.	Gorufu shika yarimasen.	I play nothing but golf. or I play only golf.
	d.	Dare ni iimashita ka.	Whom did you tell?
	e.	Tanaka-san dake ni iimashita.	I only told Mr. Tanaka.

Lesson 22

A. Perception Drill, continued.

f.	Tanaka-san ni shika iimasen deshita.	I told nobody but Mr. Tanaka.
12.	nan de mo	anything (at all), everything
	dare de mo	anybody, everybody
	doko de mo	any place, anywhere, everywhere
	itsu de mo	any time
	ikura de mo	any amount
a.	Nan de mo tabemasu.	I eat anything.
b.	Dare de mo ii desu.	Anybody will do.
c.	Doko de mo ii desu.	Any place will do.
d.	Itsu de mo ii desu.	Any time will do.
e.	Ikura de mo arimasu.	We have any amount.
	uru	informal equivalent of urimasu 'sell' (v.t.)
f.	Tabako wa dare ni de mo urimasu ka.	Do they sell cigarettes to anybody?
g.	Hai, dare ni de mo urimasu.	Yes, they sell to anybody.
13.	mono	person or thing
	tegami	letter
a.	Aru mono wa tegami o kaite imasu.	Some people are writing letters.
	yomu	informal equivalent of yomimasu 'read' (v.t.)

Lesson 22

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Aru mono wa hon o yonde imasu.	Some people are reading books.
c.	Kinoo nani o shimashita ka.	What did you do yesterday?
d.	Tegami o kaitari hon o yondari shimashita.	I wrote letters and read books (in alternation, or typically).
e.	Heitai-san wa goraku-shitsu de donna koto o shimasu ka.	What sorts of things do the soldiers do in the day room?
f.	Tegami o kaitari hon o yondari shimasu.	They do such (typical) things as writing letters and reading books. or Some write letters and others read books.
14.	hitori mo (+ negative)	not even one person
	ichi-do mo (+ negative)	not even once
	ichi-en mo (+ negative)	not even one yen
a.	Nan-nin kimashita ka.	How many people came?
b.	Hitori mo kimasen deshita.	Not even one person came.

Lesson 22

B. Dialogue.

Recreation

1. A: Kyoo wa yasumi deshoo?

B: Ee, soo desu. Sono ue honto ni ii otenki desu nee.

2. A: Demo, hei wa hitori mo miemasen ga, nani o shite iru n deshoo.

B: Kyuujitsu ni wa minna asa hayaku dekakete, yoru osoku kaerimasu.

3. A: Doko e iku no desu ka.

B: Aru heitai wa supootsu ni dekakemasu.

4. A: Heitai-san wa kibishii kunren no ato de, mata undoo o yarimasu ka.

B: Ee, yakyuu, basuketto-booru, pimpon, gorufu nado o yarimasu.

5. A: Mochiron, eiga mo mi ni ikimasu ne.

B: Ee, ikimasu. Kono chuuton-chi ni mo eiga-kan ga mittsu atte, ii eiga o yasuku misete imasu. Mata, aru mono wa chuutai no goraku-shitsu ni imasu.

6. A: Soko de wa donna koto o shimasu ka.

B: Hon o yondari, tegami o kaitari shimasu.

7. A: Chuutai ni wa baiten ga arimasu ka.

B: PX no koto desu ka.

8. A: Ee, soo desu.

B: PX wa daitai ni hitotsu gurai aru deshoo.

Lesson 22

B. Dialogue, continued.

9. A: PX de wa mi no mawari no mono shika utte imasen ka.

   B: Iie, hotondo nan-demo utte imasu.

10. A: Soko ni wa shokudoo mo arimasu ka.

    B: Ee, arimasu.

11. A: Sono shokudoo de wa, tabemono o katte, taberu n desu ka.

    B: Ee, soo desu.

12. A: Ja, kyoo wa PX e itte, nani ka tabemashoo.

    B: Mada sukoshi hayai desu kara, juuichi-ji goro ni ikimashoo.

Lesson 22

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Today is a holiday, isn't it?

B: Yes, that's right. Besides, what a beautiful day!

2. A: Yet I don't see any soldiers. What are they doing?

B: On holidays, they all go out early in the morning, and come back late at night.

3. A: Where do they go?

B: Some soldiers go out for sports.

4. A: Do soldiers do more exercise after hard training?

B: Yes, they play baseball, basketball, ping-pong, golf and so forth.

5. A: Of course, they go to see movies, don't they?

B: Yes, they do. There are three movie theaters in this camp, and they show good movies cheap. (Lit: and they are showing good movies cheap.) Again some people stay in the company day room.

6. A: What do they do there?

B: They do such things as reading books and writing letters.

7. A: Is there a store in a company?

B: You mean PX?

8. A: Yes, that's right.

B: I think there is one PX to a battalion.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Do they sell only personal goods at the PX?
(Lit: Are they selling only personal goods at the PX?)

B: No, they sell almost anything.
(Lit: No, they are selling almost anything.)

10. A: Is a dining-hall there, too?

B: Yes, there is.

11. A: Do they buy food and eat it in the dining-hall?

B: Yes, that's right.

12. A: Then, let's go to the PX today and eat something.

B: It's a little early yet, so let's go around 11 o'clock.

Lesson 22

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Adverbial form of I-adjectives.

All I-adjectives have the adverbial form ending in -ku. The adverbial form is made by dropping the final -i and adding -ku, e.g.,

Plain non-past or basic form of I-adj		Adverbial form	
hayai	'early, fast'	hayaku	'early, fast'
osoi	'late, slow'	osoku	'late'
yasui	'cheap'	yasuku	'cheaply, cheap'
isogashii	'busy'	isogashiku	'busily'
yoi	'good, fine, nice'	yoku	'well, hard, skillfully, nicely'

The adverbial form is used most commonly to modify verbs and adjectives, and this is the same form that occurs before any form of naru 'become' and (wa) arimasen 'is not' as was described previously, e.g.,

Ashita wa hayaku okimasu.
'I'll get up early tomorrow.'
Yasumi ni wa osoku okimasu.
'On holidays, I get up late.'
Kono jidoosha wa yasuku kaimashita.
'I bought this car cheap.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Taihen isogashiku narimashita.

'We became very busy.'

Ha o yoku migakinasai.

'Brush your teeth good.'

Chiisaku shite kudasai.

'Please make it small.'

Kyoo wa sugoku atsui desu.

'It's awfully hot today.'

2. ni.

Occurring after a noun or the stem to which -masu is added and before a verb of motion, the particle ni indicates that the noun or the stem is the purpose of the action expressed by the verb, e.g.,

Komban wa eiga ni ikimasu.

'I'll go to a movie tonight.'

Komban wa eiga o mi ni ikimasu.

'I'll go to see a movie tonight.'
(Note: Mi is from mimasu.)

Gogo wa gorufu ni dekakemasu.

'I'll go out golfing in the afternoon.'

Gogo wa gorufu o yari ni dekakemasu.

'I'll go out to play golf in the afternoon.'
(Note: Yari is from yarimasu.)

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kono gakkoo e nani o shi ni kimashita ka.

'What did you come to this school for?'
(Note: Shi is from shimasu.)

Nihongo o narai ni kimashita.

'I came to learn Japanese.'
(Note: Narai is from naraimasu.)

3. --- shika plus negative.

Occurring after a noun or a phrase consisting of a noun plus a particle and always before a negative of a verb, the particle shika means 'only --- (+ an affirmative)', 'nothing or nobody but --- (+ an affirmative)' or 'except for --- (+ a negative)'.

Examples:

Sukoshi tabemashita.

'I ate a little.'

Sukoshi shika tabemasen deshita.

'I ate only a little.'

Yamada-san ga kimashita.

'Mr. Yamada came.'

Yamada-san shika kimasen deshita.

'Only Mr. Yamada came.'
or
'No one came but Mr. Yamada.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nihongo o naraimashita.

'I learned Japanese.'

Nihongo shika naraimasen deshita.

'I learned only Japanese.'

or

'I didn't learn anything except Japanese.'

Tookyoo ni arimasu.

'It's in Tokyo.'

Tookyoo ni shika arimasen.

'It's only in Tokyo.'

Uchi de tabemasu.

'I eat at home.'

Uchi de shika tabemasen.

'I eat only at home.'

Note that the particle shika replaces ga and o, but it follows other particles like ni, de, etc.

The particle shika does not usually occur before a negative of the copula desu and a negative of I-adjectives. Before the copula, dake 'only' instead of shika is used, e.g.,

Kore dake desu.

'This is all.'

Kore dake ja arimasen.

'This is not all.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Chiisai dake desu.

'It's only small.'

Chiisai dake ja arimasen.

'It's not only small, but --- .'

The IIB answer to a shika question is made by using the phrase dake de naku 'not only' or bakari de naku 'not only'. In these constructions, naku is the -ku form of nai 'is not' and bakari is an equivalent of dake 'only'.

Examples:

Nihongo shika shirimasen ka.

'Do you know only Japanese?'

Iie, Nihongo dake de naku, Eigo mo shitte imasu.

'No, I know not only Japanese but also English.'

or

Iie, Nihongo bakari de naku, Eigo mo shitte imasu.

'No, I know not only Japanese but also English.'

Nihon ni shika arimasen ka.

'Is it only in Japan?'

Iie, Nihon (ni) dake de naku Amerika ni mo arimasu.

'No, it's not only in Japan but also in America.'

or

Iie, Nihon (ni) bakari de naku Amerika ni mo arimasu.

'No, it's not only in Japan but also in America.'

4. Question word plus de mo.

The use of a question word plus mo in a negative sentence was previously introduced, e.g.,

Nanni mo tabemasen deshita.

'I ate nothing.'
or
'I didn't eat anything.'

Tanaka-san wa dare mo shirimasen.

'Mr. Tanaka knows nobody.'
or
'Mr. Tanaka doesn't know anybody.'

In the above construction, the question word plus mo has an inclusive meaning - 'anything, anybody' only when it is used in a negative sentence except itsu mo 'always'. In an affirmative sentence, however, a question word plus de mo instead of a question word plus mo is used to express the inclusive meaning, e.g.,

nan de mo	'anything'
dare de mo	'anybody'
doko de mo	'anywhere'
itsu de mo	'anytime'
ikura de mo	'any amount'

ikutsu de mo	'any number of'
dore de mo	'any one'
dotchi de mo	'either one'

Nanni mo shirimasen.
'I don't know anything.'
Nan de mo shitte imasu.
'I know anything.'

Dare mo dekimasen.
'No one can do it.'
Dare de mo dekimasu.
'Anybody can do it.'

Doko ni mo arimasen.
'It's nowhere.'
Doko ni de mo arimasu.
'It's anywhere.'

De and mo are combined into the conjunction demo, which occurs at the beginning of a sentence with the meaning 'but, yet', e.g.,

Kore wa sukoshi takai desu ne.
'This is a little expensive, isn't it?'
Demo taihen atarashii desu.
'But it's very new.'

Other uses of de mo will be introduced in subsequent lessons.

5. The alternative mood -- tari --- tari suru.

To express any of the following meanings, the alternative forms are used:

a. Actions which take place in alternation.
b. Actions which are representative or typical.

The alternative forms of verbs are constructed by replacing -te and -de of the TE form of the verbs with -tari and -dari respectively, e.g.,

	Basic form		TE form	Alternative form
a. Consonant verbs:	kaku	'write'	kaite	kaitari
	hanasu	'speak'	hanashite	hanashitari
	tatsu	'stand up'	tatte	tattari
	narau	'learn'	naratte	narattari
	toru	'take'	totte	tottari
	yomu	'read'	yonde	yondari
	shinu	'die'	shinde	shindari
	tobu	'fly'	tonde	tondari
	kagu	'smell'	kaide	kaidari
b. Vowel verbs:	miru	'see'	mite	mitari
	taberu	'eat'	tabete	tabetari

Lesson 22

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

c.	Irregular verbs:	suru 'do'	shite	shitari
		kuru 'come'	kite	kitari
d.	Special honorific verbs:	kudasaru 'give me'	kudasatte	kudasattari
		irassharu 'is, go, come'	irasshatte	irasshattari
		nasaru 'do'	nasatte	nasattari

One or more alternative forms may occur in the same sentences. The last alternative form is always followed by some form of the verb suru 'do'.

Examples:

a. Actions happening in alternation:

Kodomo ga itsu mo detari haittari shimasu.

'The children get in and out all the time.'

Ano hito wa ittari kitari shite imasu.

'He is going back and forth.'

b. Representative or typical action(s).

Watakushi wa yasumi ni wa terebi o mitari, gorufu o yattari shimasu.

'I do such things as watching a television and playing golf on holidays.'

Heitai-san wa goraku-shitsu de tegami o kaitari, hon o yondari shimasu.

'Soldiers do things like writing letters and reading books in the day room.'

Lesson 22

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

6. One plus a counter plus *mo*.

A number consisting of the numeral *one* and a *counter* followed by the particle *mo* occurs always in a negative sentence with the meaning 'not even one ---,' e.g.,

Hei wa *hitori* *mo* *miemasen*.
'I don't see even a single soldier.'
or
'I don't see any soldier.'

Ichi-jikan *mo* kakarimasen.
'It won't take even one hour.'

7. *mieru* 'is visible, can be seen'.

The verb *mieru* is an intransitive verb, and therefore it never takes a direct object, e.g.,

Nani *ga* miemasu ka.
'What can you see?'
or
'What do you see?'
Gakkoo *ga* miemasu.
'I can see the school.'

Heisha *mo* miemasu ka.
'Can you see the barracks, too?'
or
'Do you see the barracks, too?'
Iie, heisha *wa* miemasen.
'No, I can't see the barracks.'

Lesson 22

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Tell your maid politely:

   a. to go to bed early tonight and get up early tomorrow morning.

   b. to wash your shirts good.

   c. to write her name big.

   d. to make your trousers short.

2. On the basis of the following table, ask and then answer for what purpose each of the persons indicated did or will do such-and-such thing:

	Came to America	Will go to New York
Tanaka	to learn English	to see tall buildings
Yamada	to teach Japanese	to show his paintings
Suzuki	to buy cars	to see baseball games
Kawata	to sell things	to buy something

3. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions:

   a. Tsukue no ue ni wa hon shika arimasen ka.

   b. Kono gakkoo ni wa rikugun no seito shika imasen ka.

   c. Yuu-han shika tabemasen ka.

   d. Ichi-nichi ni ni-do shika tabemasen ka.

   e. Pen shika motte imasen ka.

   f. Gorufu shika yarimasen ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

g. Anata shika naraimasen deshita ka.

h. San-nin shika kimasen deshita ka.

i. Nihongo shika wakarimasen ka.

j. Shagekijoo ni shika ikimasen deshita ka.

4. Tell your friend that you have:

a. only 100 yen.

b. only one pair of shoes.

c. only one suit of regulation uniform.

d. only one child.

e. only one pen.

5. Express the following in Japanese.

a. Anybody knows it.

b. Nobody knows it.

c. He knows something.

d. I eat anything.

e. He eats nothing.

f. She eats something.

g. It's anywhere.

h. It's nowhere.

i. It's somewhere.

B. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

6. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences of each pair into one using the alternative forms:

   a. (1) Gorakushitsu de hon o yomimasu.

      (2) Gorakushitsu de tegami o kakimasu.

   b. (1) Gakkoo de Nihongo o kikimasu.

      (2) Gakkoo de Nihongo o hanashimasu.

   c. (1) Tanaka-san wa nete imasu.

      (2) Tanaka-san wa okite imasu.

   d. (1) Koko de wa mono o utte imasu.

      (2) Koko de wa mono o katte imasu.

   e. (1) Heitai wa terebi o mimasu.

      (2) Heitai wa rajio o kikimasu.

   f. (1) Hanako-san wa mainichi sooji o shimasu.

      (2) Hanako-san wa mainichi sentaku o shimasu.

   g. (1) Kodomo ga doa o akete imasu.

      (2) Kodomo ga doa o shimete imasu.

   h. (1) Kiite wakarimashita.

      (2) Mite wakarimashita.

   i. (1) Sensei ga kyooshitsu kara demasu.

      (2) Sensei ga kyooshitsu ni hairimasu.

7. Tell your friend that:

   a. you didn't see a soul.

   b. you don't even have a cent.

   c. you don't know a single Japanese word.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

d. you haven't received a single letter.

8. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. Anybody can enter here.
   b. Can I buy any amount?
   c. Anybody can understand that.
   d. I wonder if you can buy it anywhere?
   e. I can't see anything.
   f. I wonder if we can see our home from there.

Lesson 23

A. Perception Drill.

1.	sensha or tanku	tank
	ookii	big, large (I-adj.)
	ookisa	size (noun)
	takai	high, tall (I-adj.)
	takasa	height
	nagai	long
	nagasa	length
	omoi	heavy
	omosa	weight
	ton	ton
	haba	width
	sootoo	quite, fairly
a.	Sono sensha no ookisa wa dono gurai desu ka.	What's the approximate size of that tank?
	ten	point
b.	Takasa ga ni-ten yonjuu hachi-meetoru, nagasa ga hachi-meetoru, omosa ga sanjuu go-ton desu.	Its height is 2.48 meters; its length is 8 meters and its weight is 35 tons.
c.	Sootoo ookii desu ne.	It's quite big, isn't it?
d.	Ee, kanari ookii desu.	Yes, it's quite big.
e.	Sono sensha wa haba ga hiroi desu ka.	Is that tank wide? (Lit: As for that tank, its width is wide?)
f.	Iie, haba ga semai desu.	No, it's narrow.

Lesson 23

A. Perception Drill, continued.

2.	hikui	low, short (I-adj.)
a.	Kono sensha wa hikui desu ne.	This tank is low, isn't it?
b.	Ee, kore wa hikui sensha desu.	Yes, this is a low tank.
3.	jooin	crew, crew member
	bihoo	armament, gun
	kanon	cannon
	- shiki	Model -- (suffix)
	Rokujuu ichi-shiki	Model 61
	Emu-yonjuu ichi	M 41
	meetoru	meter
	miri	millimeter
a.	Sono sensha ni wa jooin ga nam-mei imasu ka.	How many crew members are there in that tank?
b.	Yom-mei imasu.	There are four men.
c.	Rokujuu ichi-shiki no sensha ni wa donna bihoo ga arimasu ka.	What sort of armament does the Model 61 tank have?
d.	Kyuujuu-miri kanon ga arimasu.	It has a 90 mm cannon.
4.	mimasu	see, look at
	mitai	want to see, desirous of seeing (informal, I -adj.)
	tabemasu	eat

Lesson 23

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	tabetai	want to eat, desirous of eating, (informal, I-adj.)
	yomimasu	read
	yomitai	want to read, desirous of reading (informal, I-adj.)
	ikimasu	go
	ikitai	want to go, desirous of going (informal, I-adj.)
	shimasu	do
	shitai	want to do, desirous of doing (informal I-adj.)
	kimasu	come
	kitai	want to come, desirous of coming (informal I-adj.)
	asatte	the day after tomorrow
	shiasatte	three days from today
a.	Asatte ikitai desu ka.	Do you want to go the day after tomorrow?
b.	Iie, asatte ikitaku wa arimasen.	No, I don't want to go the day after tomorrow.
c.	Nani o tabetai desu ka. or Nani ga tabetai desu ka.	What do you want to eat?

Lesson 23

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	d.	Sukiyaki o tabetai desu. or Sukiyaki ga tabetai desu.	I want to eat SUKIYAKI.
	e.	Nani ga shitai desu ka.	What do you want to do?
	f.	Nanni mo shitaku wa arimasen.	I don't want to do anything.
5.		annai	invitation, guidance
		annai o suru or annai-suru	guide, conduct, show, invite (v.t.)
		goannai	honorific equivalent of annai
		goannai-suru	honorific equivalent of annai-suru
	a.	Itsuka sensha-daitai ni goannai-shimashoo ka.	Shall I show you the tank battalion sometime?
	b.	Onegaishimasu.	Please.
6.		benkyoo	study, studying
		benkyoo-suru	study (v.t.)
		benkyoo-dekiru	can study (v.i.)
		shitsumon	question
		shitsumon-suru	question (v.t.)
		goshitsumon	honorific equivalent of shitsumon
		goshitsumon-kudasai	honorific equivalent of shitsumon-shite kudasai 'please ask questions'

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Sensha ni tsuite benkyoo-shitai desu.	I want to study about tanks.
b.	Doozo goshitsumon-kudasai.	Please ask me questions.
7.	-satsu	counter for the number of volumes or copies of books, magazines, etc.
	is-satsu	1 copy or volume
	ni-satsu	2 copies or volumes
	san-satsu	3 copies or volumes
	yon-satsu	4 copies or volumes
	go-satsu	5 copies or volumes
	roku-satsu	6 copies or volumes
	nana-satsu	7 copies or volumes
	has-satsu	8 copies or volumes
	kyuu-satsu	9 copies or volumes
	jis-satsu or jus-satsu	10 copies or volumes
	nan-satsu	how many copies or volumes?
	kudasai	give me
	agemasu	formal equivalent of ageru 'give' (to someone other than the speaker, v.t.)
a.	Sono hon o is-satsu kudasai.	Please give me a copy of that book.
b.	Hai, agemasu.	Yes, I'll give it to you.

Lesson 23

A. Perception Drill, continued.

8.		tsugoo	convenience, circumstances, conditions
		tsugoo ga ii	it is convenient, it suits me
		tsugoo ga warui	it is inconvenient, I am not free
		gotsugoo	honorific equivalent of tsugoo
		ikaga	how
	a.	Gotsugoo wa ikaga desu ka.	How is it with you?
	b.	Sukoshi tsugoo ga warui desu.	It's a little inconvenient (for me).
9.	a.	Ashita de ii desu ka. or Ashita de mo ii desu ka.	Is tomorrow all right? or Will tomorrow do?
	b.	Ashita de ii desu. or Ashita de mo ii desu.	Tomorrow is all right. or Tomorrow will do.
	c.	Dare de mo ii desu ka.	Is anybody all right? or Will anybody do?
	d.	Dare de mo ii desu.	Anybody is all right. or Anybody will do.
	e.	Itsu de mo ii desu ka.	Is anytime all right?
	f.	Itsu de mo ii desu.	Anytime is all right.

Lesson 23

B. Dialogue.

Tanks.

1. A: Hohei-shidan ni wa kikoo-butai ga arimasu ka.

   B: Hai, sensha-daitai ga arimasu.

2. A: Itsu ka sensha-daitai o mi ni ikitai desu.

   B: Goannai-shimasu.

3. A: Ashita ka asatte da to, tsugoo ga ii desu ga.

   B: Ashita to asatte wa watakushi ni wa tsugoo ga warui desu. Shiasatte wa ikaga desu ka.

4. A: Shiasatte de mo ii desu. Shiasatte da to, sono mae ni sensha ni tsuite benkyoo dekimasu kara.

   B: Watakushi ga setsumei-shimasu kara, nan de mo goshitsumon-kudasai. Sore kara, ato de hon mo is-satsu agemasu.

5. A: Watakushi wa sensha ni tsuite wa chitto mo shirimasen kara, onegai-shimasu. Sensha wa sootoo ookii mono deshoo ne.

   B: Ookisa wa iroiro arimasu. Nihon de wa Rokujuu ichi-shiki o tsukutte imasu ga, kore wa omosa ga sanjuu go-ton desu. Sore kara, Amerika kara Emu-yonjuu ichi o moraimashita ga, kore wa yonjuu it-ton desu.

6. A: Nagasa wa dono gurai desu ka.

   B: Rokujuu ichi-shiki wa hachi-ten rei go-meetoru de, Emu-yonjuu ichi wa nana-ten kyuujuu san-meetoru desu.

7. A: Takasa wa?

   B: Rokujuu ichi-shiki wa ni-ten yonjuu hachi meetoru de, Emu-yonjuu ichi wa ni-ten hachijuu san meetoru desu.

Lesson 23

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: **Rokujuu ichi-shiki wa hikui desu ne. Haba ga hiroi no desu ka.**

B: **Iie, haba mo semai desu. Nihon wa michi mo tetsudoo mo semai kara desu.**

9. A: **Jooin wa nan-nin imasu ka.**

B: **Dochira ni mo yom-mei imasu.**

10. A: **Bihoo wa?**

B: **Rokujuu ichi-shiki no wa kyuujuu-miri de, Emu-yonjuu ichi no wa nanajuu roku-miri kanon desu.**

11. A: **Doo mo arigatoo gozaimashita. Dewa, shiasatte, sensha-daitai e annai-shite kudasai.**

B: **Hai, kashikomarimashita.**

12. A: **Sore kara, ano hon o onegai-shimasu.**

B: **Hai, komban motte kimasu.**

Lesson 23

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Are there any armored units in an infantry division?

B: Yes, there is a tank battalion.

2. A: I like to go to see a tank battalion sometime.

B: I'll show you. (or I'll guide you.)

3. A: If it's tomorrow or the day after tomorrow, it'll suit me fine.

B: I won't be free tomorrow and the day after tomorrow. How about three days from today.

4. A: Three days from today is fine. If it's three days from today, I can study about tanks before that.

B: I'll explain, so please ask me any questions. And I'll give you a book, too.

5. A: I don't know a thing about tanks, so please (do me a favor). Tanks are quite big, aren't they?

B: There are various sizes. They are producing Model 61's in Japan, and they weigh 35 tons. And they have received M 41's from America, but they are 41 tons.

6. A: What's the approximate length?

B: The Model 61 is 8.05 meters, and the M 41 is 7.93 meters.

7. A: How about the height?

B: The Model 61 is 2.48 meters, and the M 41 is 2.83 meters.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: The Model 61 is low, isn't it? Is it wide?

   B: No, it's narrow, too. Because in Japan, roads and railroads are narrow.

9. A: How many crew members are there?

   B: Both of them have four men.

10. A: How about the armament?

    B: The Model 61 has a 90 mm cannon, and the M41 has a 76 mm cannon.

11. A: Thank you very much. Then, please take me to a tank battalion three days from today.

    B: Yes, I will.

12. A: And please give me that book.

    B: Yes, I'll bring it tonight.

Lesson 23

D. Grammar Notes.

1. *-tai*.

-Tai is an inflected suffix always suffixed to the stem of the *-masu* form of a verb. That is, *-tai* replaces *-masu* of the *-masu* form of a verb, and the result is an I-adjective meaning '(I) *want to do* so-and-so', e.g.,

Nihon e *ikitai*. (informal)
'I want to go to Japan.'
Nani ka *tabetai*. (informal)
'I want to eat something?'

Like all other I-adjectives, a *-tai* word alone is informal. To change it to the formal style, the copula *desu* with or without *n* is added, e.g.,

Nihon e *ikitai desu*. (formal)
or
Nihon e *ikitai n desu*. (formal)
'I want to go to Japan.'

Nanika *tabetai desu*. (formal)
or
Nanika *tabetai n desu*. (formal)
'I want to eat something.'

Since a *-tai* word is an I-adjective, it occurs in its *-ku* form before *(wa) arimasen* and *narimasu*, e.g.,

Ikitaku wa arimasen.
'I don't want to go.'

Lesson 23

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tabetaku wa arimasen.
'I don't want to eat.'

Ikitaku narimashita.
'I became desirous of going.'
Tabetaku narimashita.
'I became desirous of eating.'

When -tai is suffixed to a transitive verb, the particle ga instead of o usually occurs after the noun which would otherwise be the direct object of the transitive verb, e.g.,

Sukiyaki ga tabetai desu.
'I want to eat SUKIYAKI.'
Nihongo ga naraitai desu.
'I want to learn Japanese.'
Jidoosha ga kaitai desu.
'I want to buy a car.'

Like in other cases, the particle ga may be changed to wa or mo depending on the context, e.g.,

Kore ga kaitai desu ka.
'Do you want to buy this?'
Iie, sore wa kaitaku wa arimasen.
'No, I don't want to buy that.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Booshi mo kaitai desu.

'I want to buy a hat, too.'

2. Nouns derived from I-adjectives.

The stem of the basic form of an I-adjective is the informal non-past form minus its final -i.

I-adjectives become nouns by suffixing -sa to the stem of their basic form. The nouns thus formed mean 'extent or degree of the quality, condition or state which the I-adjectives express'.

Examples:

I-adjective		-sa noun	
ookii	'big, large'	ookisa	'size'
nagai	'long'	nagasa	'length'
takai	'high, tall'	takasa	'height'
omoi	'heavy'	omosa	'weight'
atsui	'thick'	atsusa	'thickness'
atsui	'hot'	atsusa	'heat'
hiroi	'wide'	hirosa	'area'
hayai	'early, quick'	hayasa	'speed'

3. hiroi and semai.

The I-adjective hiroi means 'wide, vast, spacious', and it normally refers to area. Its opposite is semai meaning 'narrow, cramped'.

Lesson 23

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Both *hiroi* and *semai* normally refer to area, e.g.,

Kono heya wa *hiroi* desu.

'This room is roomy.'

Kono kyooshitsu wa sukoshi *semai* desu.

'This classroom is a little cramped.'

They are also used to describe the *width* of a thing. However, when they are so used, they often occur with the additional word *haba* 'width' to make the reference clear, e.g.,

Kono hon *wa* haba *ga* *hiroi* desu.

'This book is wide.'
(Lit: As for this book, its width is wide.)

Thus, in describing a thing, the Japanese commonly mention the thing plus *wa* first as the notional subject, then mention a specific part of the thing plus *ga* as the subject, and finally an adjective which describes the quality of the specific part.

Examples:

Tanaka-san *wa* ashi *ga* *nagai* desu.

'Mr. Tanaka has long legs.'
(Lit: As for Mr. Tanaka, his legs are long.)

Nihon *wa* michi *ga* semai desu.

'Japan has narrow roads.'
or
'Roads in Japan are narrow.'

(Lit: As for Japan, its roads are narrow.)

4. -satsu.

-Satsu is a counter to count the number of volumes or copies of books and magazines. It is also combined primarily with the Chinese series of numerals:

is-satsu	'1 volume'	nana-satsu	'7 volumes'
ni-satsu	'2 volumes'	has-satsu	'8 volumes'
san-satsu	'3 volumes'	kyuu-satsu	'9 volumes'
yon-satsu	'4 volumes'	jis-satsu or jus-satsu	'10 volumes'
go-satsu	'5 volumes'		
roku-satsu	'6 volumes'	nan-satsu	'how many volumes?'

5. agemasu.

The verb agemasu is the formal equivalent of ageru meaning 'give to someone other than the speaker', e.g.,

Kono hon o agemashoo ka.
'Shall I give you this book?'
Hai, kudasai.
'Yes, please (give me)'.

Ano okane wa Tanaka-san ni agemashita.
'I gave that money to Mr. Tanaka.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The verb ageru also occurs after the TE form of verbs with the meaning 'one renders services to someone other than the speaker'. Compare:

Yamada-san ni hon o is-satsu agemashita.
'I gave a book to Mr. Yamada.'
Yamada-san ni hon o yonde agemashita.
'I read the book for (or to) Mr. Yamada.'

Suzuki-san ni booshi o agemashita.
'I gave Mr. Suzuki a hat.'
Suzuki-san ni booshi o katte agemashita.
'I bought Mr. Suzuki a hat.'

Nihongo o oshiete agemashoo ka.
'Shall I teach you Japanese.'
Hai, oshiete kudasai.
'Yes, please (teach me).'

The word yaru was introduced in the previous lesson with the meaning 'do, play'. But it also occurs with the same meaning as that of ageru. These two words, therefore, mean the same thing, but they are not used interchangeably. In general, yaru is used most commonly in talking to friends and social inferiors, and ageru in reference to persons of equal or superior social standing including strangers and casual acquaintances, e.g.,

Ano zasshi wa chuutai-choo ni agemashita.

'I gave that magazine to my company commander.'

Ano zasshi wa tomodachi ni yarimashita.

'I gave that magazine to my friend.'

6. Suru - verbs.

Many nouns especially those borrowed from foreign languages like Chinese and English occur as verbs with the suffix -suru. The following examples have already been introduced:

noun		suru-verb	
sentaku	'washing'	sentaku-suru	'wash' (v.t.)
soosa	'operation'	soosa-suru	'operate (v.t.)
annai	'invitation'	annai-suru	'guide, invite (v.t.)
benkyoo	'study'	benkyoo-suru	'study' (v.t.)
tenken	'inspection'	tenken-suru	'inspect' (v.t.)
undoo	'exercise'	undoo-suru	'exercise' (v.i.)
sooji	'cleaning'	sooji-suru	'clean' (v.t.)
koogun	'march'	koogun-suru	'march' (v.i.)
roei	'bivouac'	roei-suru	'bivouac' (v.i.)
keikai	'security'	keikai-suru	'secure, safeguard' (v.t.)

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

setsumei	'explanation'	setsumei-suru	'explain' (v.t.)
sitsumon	'question'	sitsumon-suru	'question' (v.i.)

7. *--- de (mo) ii desu*.

Ii desu often occurs after the phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and *de* (with or without *mo*) with the meaning 'it's all right (even) if it is --- '.

Examples:

Kore *de* *ii desu* ka.
or
Kore *de* *mo* *ii desu* ka.

'Is this all right?'
or
'Will this do?'
(Lit: (Even) if it is this, is it all right?)

Hai, sore *de* *ii desu*.
or
Hai, sore *de* *mo* *ii desu*.

'Yes, that's fine.'
or
'Yes, that'll do.'

However, the particle *mo* 'even' always occurs between a question word plus *de* and *ii desu* with the inclusive meaning, e.g.,

Nan *de* *mo* *ii desu* ka.

'Is anything all right?'
or
'Will anything do?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Hai, *nan* *de* *mo* *ii desu*.

'Yes, anything is all right.'
or
'Yes, anything will do.'

Nan *de* *mo* *ii desu* kara, katte kudasai.

'Please buy me anything.'
(Lit: Anything will do, so please buy.)

Itsu *de* *mo* *ii desu* kara, kite kudasai.

'Please come anytime.'
(Lit: Anytime will be fine, so please come.)

Lesson 23

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following sentences to the corresponding formal sentence meaning 'X wants to do Y':

   a. Nihongo o naraimasu.

   b. Eigo o benkyoo-shimasu.

   c. Sensei ni shitsumon-shimasu.

   d. Asatte mata koko e kimasu.

   e. Itsu ka sensha-daitai e annai-shimasu.

   f. Kono nekutai o anata ni agemasu.

   g. Nani ka tabemasu.

   h. Komban wa eiga ni ikimasu.

   i. Ashita wa hayaku dekakemasu.

   j. Tanaka-san ni kono tegami o misemasu.

2. Tell your friend that you want :

   a. to go to Yokohama sometime.

   b. to read Japanese newspapers.

   c. to buy different things at the PX.

   d. to learn about tanks.

   e. to invite Mr. Tanaka to your home.

   f. to go out to play golf.

   g. to eat supper early.

   h. to come to school by car.

   i. to see Japanese movies.

   j. to stay home tonight.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

3. On the basis of the following information, describe this unknown person who has:

   a. big eyes.

   b. long legs.

   c. small ears.

   d. a short nose.

   e. a fair complexion.

4. On the basis of the following information, describe this unknown object in Japanese:

   a. length ------------ 5 meters

   b. height ------------ 3 meters

   c. width ------------- 4 meters

   d. weight ------------ 40 tons

   e. color ------------- black

5. Describe as many features or qualities as you can of each of the following:

   a. your car.

   b. your house.

   c. your friend.

   d. the weather in your area.

   e. this book.

Lesson 23

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

6. Tell your friend that you gave each of the following persons things as indicated:

	your mother	**your maid**
a.	**a new hat**	**a red sweater**
b.	**two books**	**3 magazines**
c.	**50,000 yen**	**a certain amount of money**

Lesson 24

A. Perception Drill.

1.		shidan-hoohei	division artillery
		hijoo ni	unusually, highly, very (much)
		ooki na	large, big (NA-adj.)
	a.	Shidan-hoohei wa taihen ookii butai desu ka.	Is a division artillery a very large unit?
	b.	Hai, hijoo ni ooki na butai desu.	Yes, it's a very large unit.
2.		kahoo	artillery pieces, artillery
	a.	Shidan-hoohei wa donna kahoo o tsukaimasu ka.	What sorts of artillery pieces does a division artillery use?
		omo	main, chief (copula noun)
		omo ni	mainly, chiefly, primarily
	b.	Omo ni ryuudampoo o tsukaimasu.	Chiefly it uses howitzers.
3.		shakaku	elevation, angle of elevation, angle of fire (artillery)
		kooshakaku	high angle of fire
	a.	Ryuudampo wa donna hoo desu ka.	What sort of gun is a howitzer?
	b.	Kooshakaku no hoo desu.	It's a gun (that operates) with a high angle of fire.

Lesson 24

A. Perception Drill, continued.

4.	shageki-suru	fire, shoot (v.t.)
	shageki-suru no ni	in order to fire, for the purpose of firing
	teki	enemy
a.	Kooshakaku no hoo wa donna teki o shageki-suru no ni tsukaimasu ka.	What sort of enemy do they use guns with a high angle of fire to fire at?
	oka	hill
	yama	mountain
	mukoo-gawa	the other side
b.	Oka ya chiisai yama no mukoo-gawa no teki o shageki-suru no ni tsukaimasu.	They use them in order to fire at the enemy on the other side of a hill, a small mountain, and such.
	benri	convenient, handy (copula noun)
c.	Ryuudampoo wa yama no mukoo-gawa no teki o shageki-suru no ni benri desu.	A howitzer is convenient for firing at the enemy on the other side of a mountain.
5.	shatei	range
	saidai	maximum
	saidai-shatei	maximum range
	yuukoo	effective
	yuukoo-shatei	effective range
	saidai-yuukoo-shatei	maximum effective range

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Saidai-yuukoo-shatei wa saidai-shatei to itsu mo onaji desu ka.	Is the maximum effective range always the same as the maximum range?
	ba-ai	condition, case, occasion, circumstances, situation
	ni yotte	depending on
	chigaimasu	formal equivalent of chigau 'different or wrong' (v.i.)
b.	Iie, ba-ai ni yotte chigaimasu.	No, it's different depending on cases.
6.	en-kyori	long distance
	idoo	moving
	mokuhyoo	target
	idoo-mokuhyoo	moving target
	meichuu	hit
	meichuu-suru	hit (v.i.)
a.	En-kyori no idoo-mokuhyoo ni mo meichuu-shimasu ka.	Does it hit a distant moving target, too?
b.	Iie, nakanaka meichuu-shimasen.	No, it doesn't hit it easily.
	kooka	effect, good result
	ni taishite	against (or for)
	dame	no good, no effect, useless (copula noun)

Lesson 24

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	c.	En-kyori no idoo-mokuhyoo ni taishite wa, dame desu.	It has no effect against a distant moving target.
7.		Beikoku-rikugun	U. S. Army
	a.	Beikoku-rikugun wa donna ryuudampoo o tsukatte imasu ka.	What sorts of howitzers does the U. S. Army use?
		tatoeba	for example, for instance
		nihyaku san-miri-hoo	203 mm gun
		hyaku gojuu go-miri hoo	155 mm gun
		hyaku go-miri-hoo	105 mm gun
	b.	Tatoeba, nihyaku san-miri-hoo, hyaku gojuu go-miri-hoo, hyaku go-miri-hoo desu.	For example, the 203 mm, 155 mm and 105 mm guns.
8.		roketto	rocket
	a.	Shidan-hoohei ni wa roketto wa nai desu ka.	Doesn't a division artillery have rockets?
		yahari	like the rest
	b.	Yahari arimasu.	It has like the rest (or as might be expected).
9.		-nai	negative inflected suffix 'not'
		dekimasu	is possible, can (v.i.)
		dekinai	informal equivalent of dekimasen 'is unable, can't'

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	tsukaimasu	use, employ (v.t.)
	tsukawanai	informal equivalent of tsukaimasen 'don't use'
	shimasu	do (v.t.)
	shinai	informal equivalent of shimasen 'don't do'
	kimasu	come (v.i.)
	konai	informal equivalent of kimasen 'don't come'
a.	Roketto wa, chikai mokuhyoo ni taishite wa, tsukau koto ga dekinai deshoo ne.	They can't use rockets against close targets, can they?
b.	Chikai mokuhyoo ni taishite wa tsukawanai desu.	They don't use them against close targets.
	irimasu	formal equivalent of iru 'is needed, is necessary, is required' (v.i.)
c.	Keredomo tooi tokoro o shageki-suru no ni irimasu.	But they are needed to fire at distant places.

Lesson 24

B. Dialogue.

Artillery

1. A: Hoohei wa taihen taisetsu desu ga, shidan-hoohei ni wa donna butai ga arimasu ka.

   B: Shidan-hoohei wa hijoo ni ooki na butai de, naka ni iroiro na butai ga arimasu.

2. A: Kahoo ni wa donna no ga arimasu ka.

   B: Omo ni, ryuudampoo desu.

3. A: Ryuudampoo to iu no wa donna hoo desu ka.

   B: Kooshakaku no hoo de, oka ya chiisai yama no mukoo-gawa no teki o shageki-suru no ni benri desu.

4. A: Ryuudampoo no ookisa wa dono gurai desu ka.

   B: Iroiro arimasu ga, beikoku-rikugun wa ni hyaku sam-miri-hoo, hyaku gojuu go-miri-hoo, hyaku go-miri-hoo o tsukatte imasu.

5. A: Shatei wa dono gurai desu ka.

   B: Ichiman issen-meetoru kara ichiman nanasen-meetoru gurai desu. Kore wa mochiron saidai-shatei desu.

6. A: Ooki na hoo da to, saidai-shatei ga yuukoo-shatei to onaji desu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Meichuu-suru to, sono kooka ga ookii kara desu. Keredomo, aru mokuhyoo ni taishite wa soo ja arimasen.

7. A: Aru mokuhyoo to iu no wa nan desu ka.

   B: Tatoeba, idoo-mokuhyoo desu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Soo desu nee. Yahari enkyori no idoo-mokuhyoo ni taishite wa, dame deshoo ne.

   B: Soo desu. Nisen gohyaku-meetoru yori tooi ba-ai ni wa, amari yuukoo ja nai desu.

9. A: Shidan-hoohei ni wa roketto wa nai desu ka.

   B: Arimasu. Nanahyaku rokujuu ni-miri roketto ga arimasu.

10. A: Sore wa, chikai mokuhyoo ni taishite wa, tsukau koto ga dekinai deshoo ne.

    B: Soo desu. Chikai mokuhyoo ni taishite wa tsukawanai desu ga, tooi tokoro o shageki-suru no ni irimasu.

Lesson 24

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Artillery is very important, but what sorts of units are there in a division artillery?

   B: A division artillery is a very large unit, and in it are various units.

2. A: What sorts of guns does it have?

   B: Mainly, howitzers.

3. A: What sort of gun is a howitzer?

   B: It's a gun (that operates) with a high angle of fire, and it's convenient to fire at the enemy on the other side of a hill or a small mountain.

4. A: What's the size of a howitzer?

   B: There are various sizes, but the U. S. Army uses the 203 mm, the 150 mm, and the 105 mm guns.

5. A: What's the approximate range?

   B: It's about from 11,000 meters to 17,000 meters. These are, of course, maximum ranges.

6. A: If it's a large gun, its maximum range is the same as its effective range, isn't it?

   B: That's right. Because, if it hits a target, its effect is large. But this isn't so against certain targets.

7. A: What do you mean by certain targets?

   B: For example, a moving target.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: I see. As might be expected, it's not effective against a distant moving target, is it?

B: That's right. When it is farther than 2500 meters, it's not very effective.

9. A: Doesn't a division artillery have rockets?

B: Yes, it has 762 mm rockets.

10. A: You can't use them against close targets, can you?

B: That's right. We don't use them against close targets, but we need them to fire at distant places.

Lesson 24

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Verbal noun (basic form of a verb plus no).

Occurring directly after the non-past form of a verb, no changes the verb to the corresponding verbal noun, e.g.,

Non-past form		Verbal noun	
taberu	'eat'	taberu no	'eating'
yomu	'read'	yomu no	'reading'
kaku	'write'	kaku no	'writing'
suru	'do'	suru no	'doing'

Examples:

Nihongo de kaku no wa kanari muzukashii desu.

'Writing in Japanese is quite difficult.'
or
'It's quite difficult to write in Japanese.'

Roketto wa tooi tokoro o shageki-suru no ni tsukaimasu.

'They use rockets for the purpose of firing at distant places.
or
'Rockets are used to fire at distant places.'

Aru hito wa tegami o kaku no ni jibiki o tsukaimasu.

'Some people use dictionaries for the purpose of writing letters.
or
'Some people use dictionaries to write letters.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tokei wa jikan o shiru no ni benri desu.

'Watches are convenient for telling time.'

Note that the purpose of an action other than motion is usually expressed in terms of a verbal noun instead of the stem of the -masu form. Compare:

Tanaka-san wa yuu-han o tabe ni kaerimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka went home to eat supper.'

Amerika-jin wa taberu no ni fooku ya naifu o tsukaimasu.

'Americans use such things as fork and knife to eat.'

Yamada-san wa Amerika e jidoosha o kai ni kimashita.

'Mr. Yamada came to America to buy a car.'

Jidoosha o kau no ni okane ga irimasu.

'I need money to buy a car.'
or
'Money is necessary to buy a car.'

2. Negative suffix -nai.

The negative I-adjective nai 'is not' was previously introduced as the informal equivalent of arimasen.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Compare:

Ii uchi ga *arimasen*. (formal)
Ii uchi ga *nai*. (informal)
Ii uchi ga *nai* *desu*. (formal)
'There is no good houses.'

Kore wa ryuudampo ja *arimasen*. (formal)
Kore wa ryuudampoo ja *nai*. (informal)
Kore wa ryuudampoo ja *nai* *desu*. (formal)
'This is not a howitzer.'

Ano mokuhyoo wa tooku wa *arimasen*. (formal)
Ano mokuhyoo wa tooku wa *nai*. (informal)
Ano mokuhyoo wa tooku wa *nai* *desu*. (formal)
'That target is not far.'

In this lesson *-nai* is introduced for the first time as an informal negative suffix. For every formal negative verb form ending in *-masen*, there is an informal equivalent ending in *-nai* except for the negative *arimasen* as explained above. Compare:

	Formal negative		Informal negative
a. Consonant verbs:	ikimasen	'don't go'	ikanai
	hanashimasen	'don't speak'	hanasanai
	tachimasen	'don't stand up'	tatanai

	shinimasen	'don't die'	shinanai
	naraimasen	'don't learn'	nara*w*anai
	yomimasen	'don't read'	yomanai
	kaerimasen	'don't go home'	kaeranai
	kagimasen	'don't smell'	kaganai
	tobimasen	'don't fly'	tobanai
b. Vowel verbs:	tabemasen	'don't eat'	tabenai
	mimasen	'don't see'	minai
c. Irregular verbs:	shimasen	'don't do'	shinai
	kimasen	'don't come'	konai
d. Special honorific verbs:	kudasaimasen	'don't give me'	kudasaranai
	irasshaimasen	'is not, don't come, don't go'	irassharanai
	nasaimasen	'don't do'	nasaranai

Note that the stem of the informal negative or *-nai* form of consonant verbs and special honorific verbs ends in *-a* whereas the stem of their *-masu* or *-masen* form ends in *-i*. Note also that the stem of the *-nai* form and the stem of the *-masu* or *-masen* form of vowel verbs and the irregular verb *suru* 'do' are the same. Note, however, that the stem of the *-nai* form of the irregular verb *kuru* 'come' is *-o*.

The stem of the *-nai* form of verbs will be called the negative stem hereafter.

Lesson 24

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Sentences ending in the informal negative suffix *-nai* is changed to a formal style by adding *desu*, *no desu*, or *n desu*. Compare:

Shirimasen.	(formal)
Shiranai.	(informal)
Shiranai desu.	(formal)

'I don't know.'

The *-nai* form inflects in the same way as all I-adjectives.

3. *iru* 'is necessary'.

The verb *iru* is a consonant verb. It is also an intransitive verb which takes no direct object, and it means 'is wanted, is needed, is required, is necessary'.

Examples:

Okane *ga* *irimasu*.

'I need some money.'
or
'I want some money.'

Kutsu *wa* *irimasen*.

'I don't need shoes.'
or
'I don't want shoes.'

Nani ka *iru* n desu ka.

'Do you need anything?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nanni mo iranai n desu.

'I don't need anything.'

Note that the verb iru is used when one needs or wants goods. The inflected suffix -tai is used when one wants to do so-and-so action.

Lesson 24

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Answer each of the following questions in full:

   a. Tegami o kaku no ni nani o tsukaimasu ka.

   b. Nihongo o narau no ni hon ga irimasu ka.

   c. Yama no mukoo-gawa no teki o shageki-suru no ni donna hoo o tsukaimasu ka.

   d. Kooshakaku no hoo wa donna tokoro o shageki-suru no ni benri desu ka.

   e. PX ga aru to, nani o suru no ni benri desu ka.

2. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. I need a lot of money to buy a house.

   b. You don't need any money to enter this school.

   c. Use this gun to fire at that moving target.

   d. The Japanese use their right hands to write.

   e. I bought a lot of food in preparation for consuming it tomorrow.

3. Change each of the following formal -masen forms to the corresponding informal -nai or nai form:

   a. Okane ga chitto mo arimasen.

   b. Sore wa hakugekihoo ja arimasen.

   c. Ano gunjin wa nanni mo shirimasen.

   d. Soto ni wa dare mo imasen.

   e. Taroo wa mada kite imasen.

   f. Hanako wa sukoshi shika tabemasen.

   g. Ano heitai wa Nihongo de hanasu koto ga dekimasen.

   h. Nihongo wa muzukashiku wa arimasen.

B. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

i. Kodomo-tachi wa mada kaette imasen.

j. Ashita wa gakkoo e kimasen.

k. Ano seito wa amari benkyoo-shimasen.

l. Komban eiga ni ikitaku wa arimasen.

4. Complete each of the following sentences by adding an appropriate conclusion:

a. Yoru hayaku nenai to, -------- .

b. Itsumo daidokoro o yoku sooji-shinai to, ------ .

c. Ammari yoku nai kara, ------- .

d. Okane ga nai kara, -------- .

e. Ashita wa yasumi ja nai kara, ------- .

5. Take turns asking and answering questions about the characteristics of some artillery weapons.

6. Tell your commander that you want:

a. to fire at the enemy on the other side of a hill.

b. five men.

c. one mortar and one machine gun.

d. to start off now.

Lesson 25

A. Perception Drill.

1.		konogoro	nowadays, these days, present time
		akarui	light, bright (I-adj.)
		kurai	dark (I-adj.)
	a.	Konogoro wa nan-ji goro ni akaruku narimasu ka.	About what time does it become light nowadays?
	b.	Roku-ji goro ni akaruku narimasu.	It gets light around six o'clock.
	c.	Nan-ji goro kuraku narimasu ka.	About what time does it become dark?
	d.	Shichi-ji goro kuraku narimasu.	It gets dark around seven o'clock.
2.		yasumimasu	formal equivalent of *yasumu*, 'rest, retire, go to bed' (v.i.)
		nemasu	formal equivalent of *neru*, 'sleep, lie down, go to bed' (v.i.)
	a.	Yoru nan-ji goro yasumimasu ka.	About what time do you go to bed at night?
	b.	Juuichi-ji goro nemasu.	I go to bed around 11 o'clock.
		osoku	late (from *osoi*)
	c.	Osoku made okite imasu ne.	You are up till late, aren't you?
3.		ototoi	the day before yesterday
	a.	Ototoi wa nan-ji goro okimashita ka.	About what time did you get up the day before yesterday?

Lesson 25

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		asaneboo	late riser, late rising
		asaneboo o suru or asaneboo-suru	get up late, rise late, sleep till late in the morning (v.i.)
	b.	Asaneboo-shite, ku-ji goro okimashita.	I slept till late and got up around 9 o'clock.
4.	a.	Naze asaneboo-shimashita ka.	Why did you get up late?
		shukujitsu	holiday, festival
	b.	Ototoi wa shukujitsu deshita kara desu.	It's because the day before yesterday was a holiday.
5.		karada	body, one's health
		ni	for
	a.	Asa hayaku okiru no wa karada ni ii desu ka.	Is it good for one's health to get up early in the morning?
	b.	Hai, soo desu.	Yes, that's right.
6.		shigoto	work, job
	a.	Ashita wa shigoto ni ikimasu ka.	Are you going to work tomorrow?
	b.	Iie, ashita wa yasumi desu kara, ikimasen.	No, I'm not going because tomorrow is a day off.
7.		-yoobi or -yoo	suffix for the days of the week
		nan-yoobi	What day of the week?

Lesson 25

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	getsu-yoobi	Monday
	ka-yoobi	Tuesday
	sui-yoobi	Wednesday
	moku-yoobi	Thursday
	kin-yoobi	Friday
	do-yoobi	Saturday
	nichi-yoobi	Sunday
	hatarakimasu	formal equivalent of hataraku 'work' (v.i.)
a.	Nan-yoobi ni hatarakimasu ka.	What days of the week do you work?
b.	Getsu-yoobi kara kin-yoobi made hatarakimasu.	I work from Monday through Friday.
	mainichi	everyday, daily
	-zutsu	suffix meaning 'each'
c.	Mainichi nan-jikan-zutsu hatarakimasu ka.	How many hours (each) do you work everyday? or How many hours a day do you work?
d.	Hachi-jikan-zutsu hatarakimasu.	I work 8 hours each. or I work 8 hours a day.
8.	hiru	daytime, noon, lunch
	ohiru	polite equivalent of hiru
	hiruma	daytime
	meshi	meal, boiled rice

Lesson 25

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	hirumeshi	lunch (used by men)
	chuushoku	lunch
a.	Ohiru wa taitei doko de tabemasu ka.	Where do you eat lunch usually?
	to or to issho ni	together with
	torimasu	formal equivalent of toru, 'to eat' (v.t.)
b.	Chuushoku wa tomodachi to gakko de torimasu.	I eat lunch with my friend at the school.

Lesson 25

B. Dialogue.

Days of the Week.

1. A: Kono goro wa asa nan-ji goro ni akaruku narimasu ka.

B: Roku-ji goro ni akaruku narimasu.

2. A: Nan-ji goro kuraku narimasu ka.

B: Roku-ji goro desu.

3. A: Anata wa yoru nan-ji goro yasunde, asa nan-ji goro okimasu ka.

B: Juuichi-ji goro yasunde, roku-ji-han goro okimasu.

4. A: Hayaku nete, hayaku okiru no wa karada ni ii desu ka.

B: Soo desu.

5. A: Kinoo no asa wa nan-ji goro made nete imashita ka.

B: Hachi-ji goro made nete imashita. Kinoo to ototoi wa asaneboo-shimashita.

6. A: Naze desu ka.

B: Do-yoobi to nichi-yoobi wa kyuujitsu desu kara, asa osoku made okimasen.

7. A: Hoka no hi wa shigoto desu ne.

B: Soo desu ga, tokidoki shukujitsu ga arimasu.

8. A: Tokidoki shukujitsu ga nichi-yoobi ni kimasu ga, sonna toki ni wa doo shimasu ka.

B: Sonna toki ni wa getsu-yoobi ni yasumimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

9. A: Anata wa gakkoo no sensei desu ga, mainichi nan-jikan zutsu oshiemasu ka.

B: Getsu-yoobi, sui-yoobi, kin-yoobi ni wa yo-jikan; ka-yoobi to moku-yoobi ni wa san-jikan oshiemasu.

10. A: Yoru mo oshiemasu ka.

B: Iie, hiruma dake desu.

11. A: Ohiru ni wa uchi e kaerimasu ka.

B: Iie, watakushi wa hirumeshi ni kaerimasen. Tokidoki wa yuu-han ni mo kaerimasen.

12. A: Sonna ni isogashii desu ka.

B: Iie, soo ja arimasen. Chuushoku wa taitei tomodachi to torimasu. Isogashii toki ni wa, yoru mo hatarakimasu kara, yuu-han ni kaerimasen.

Lesson 25

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: About what time does it get light in the morning nowadays?

   B: About six o'clock.

2. A: About what time does it get dark?

   B: Around six o'clock.

3. A: About what time do you retire at night and get up in the morning?

   B: I go to bed around 11 o'clock and get up around 6:30.

4. A: Is it good for the health to go to bed early and get up early?

   B: That's right.

5. A: Till about what time were you in bed yesterday morning?

   B: I was in bed till about 8 o'clock. I got up late yesterday and the day before.

6. A: Why?

   B: Saturdays and Sundays are days off, so I don't get up till late in the morning.

7. A: The other days are work days, aren't they?

   B: That's right, but we have holidays once in a while.

8. A: Sometimes holidays come on Sundays, and what do you do on such occasions?

   B: On such occasions, we rest on Mondays.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

9. A: You are a school teacher, and how many hours do you teach daily?

   B: I teach four hours on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays, and three hours on Tuesdays and Thursdays.

10. A: Do you teach at night, too?

    B: No, only during the daytime.

11. A: Do you go home for lunch?

    B: No, I don't go home for lunch. Sometimes I don't go home for supper either.

12. A: Are you that busy?

    B: No, it isn't that. I usually eat lunch with my friend. When I'm busy, I work at night, too; so I don't go home for supper.

D. Grammar Notes.

1. to.

Occurring after a noun, the particle to means 'together with'. It is often followed by the phrase issho ni which means 'together'.

Examples:

Dare to ikimasu ka.
or
Dare to issho ni ikimasu ka.
'Whom are you going with?'

Tomodachi to ikimasu.
or
Tomodachi to issho ni ikimasu.
'I'm going with my friend.'

2. -yoobi 'days of the week'.

-Yoobi is the suffix to indicate days of the week. It is often reduced to -yoo, e.g.,

-yoobi	-yoo	
nichi-yoobi	nichi-yoo	Sunday
getsu-yoobi	getsu-yoo	Monday
ka-yoobi	ka-yoo	Tuesday
sui-yoobi	sui-yoo	Wednesday
moku-yoobi	moku-yoo	Thursday
kin-yoobi	kin-yoo	Friday
do-yoobi	do-yoo	Saturday
nan-yoobi	nan-yoo	What day?

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

When the days of the week are used to indicate the time at or about which something happens, the particle ni, goro, or goro ni follows, e.g.,

Nan-yoobi ni Tokyoo e ikimasu ka.

'What day are you going to Tokyo?'

Moku-yoobi ni ikimasu.

'I'm going on Thursday.'

3. -zutsu.

-Zutsu is a suffix meaning 'each' or denoting equal number in groups.

Mainichi hachi-jikan-zutsu hatarakimasu.

'I work 8 hours a day.'
(Lit: I work 8 hours each everyday.)

Pen to empitsu o sam-bon-zutsu kaimashita.

'I bought three each, pens and pencils.'

Seito ni hon o ni-satsu-zutsu yarimashita.

'I gave two books to each student.'
or
'I gave the students two books each.'

4. desu.

The formal copula desu is often used in place of the previously mentioned predicate.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Compare:

Nan-ji goro kuraku narimasu ka.

'About what time does it get dark?'

Hachi-ji goro kuraku narimasu.
or
Hachi-ji goro desu.

'(It gets dark) around 8 o'clock.'

Kinoo wa asaneboo-shimashita.

'I got up late yesterday.'

Naze asaneboo-shimashita ka.
or
Naze desu ka.

'Why (did you get up late)?'

Yoru mo oshiemasu ka.

'Do you teach at night, too?'

Iie, hiruma dake oshiemasu.
or
Iie, hiruma dake desu.

'No, (I teach) only the daytime.'

Naze nichi-yoobi ni wa shigoto ni ikimasen ka.

'Why don't you go to work on Sundays?'

Nichi-yoobi wa kyuujitsu da kara, shigoto ni ikimasen.
or
Nichiyoobi wa kyuujitsu da kara desu.

'Because Sundays are holidays (I don't go to work).'

Lesson 25

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

5. ga.

Occurring at the end of a sentence or clause, the particle ga usually means 'but'. However the Japanese often use it just to connect sentences without meaning 'but'. In such cases, it may be interpreted to mean just 'and'.

Examples:

Anata wa gakkoo no sensei desu ga, mainichi nan-jikan-zutsu oshiemasu ka.

'You are a school teacher, and how many hours do you teach?'

Kinoo Kyooto e ikimashita ga, Kyooto wa kirei na tokoro desu ne.

'I went to Kyoto yesterday, and Kyoto is a beautiful place, isn't it?'

Tokidoki shukujitsu ga nichi-yoo ni kimasu ga, sonna toki ni wa doo shimasu ka.

'Sometimes feast days fall on Sundays, and what do you do on such occasions?'

6. sonna ni.

Like kono, sono, ano and dono the following four pre-nouns also constitute a similar set:

konna	'this sort of, this'
sonna	'that sort of, that'
anna	'that sort of, that'
donna	'what sort of?, what?, how?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The above pre-nouns occur with the particle ni with the adverbial meaning, e.g.,

Konna ni isogashii to byooki ni naru deshoo.
'If it's this busy, I'll probably become sick.'

Sonna ni isogashii desu ka.
'Are you that busy?'

Anna ni samui tokoro wa takusan arimasen.
'There aren't many places that are that cold.'

Donna ni warui desu ka.
'How bad is it?'

7. osoku 'late'.

-Ku form of some I-adjectives occurs as a noun, e.g.,

I-adjective		Noun	
osoi	'late, slow'	osoku	'late'
chikai	'near, close'	chikaku	'vicinity'
ooi	'many'	ooku	'lot'
tooi	'far, distant'	tooku	'distant place'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Answer the following questions in complete sentences:

   a. Asaneboo-suru no wa karada ni ii desu ka.

   b. Yoru osoku taberu no wa karada ni warui desu ka.

   c. Kurai tokoro de hon ya shimbun o yomu no wa me ni warui desu ka.

   d. Chitto mo undoo shinai no wa karada ni warui desu ka.

   e. Yoru mado o akete yasumu no wa karada ni ii desu ka.

2. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. It's good for the health to exercise a little everyday.

   b. It's bad for the eyes to watch television till late at night.

   c. It's difficult for a child to walk 5 miles a day.

   d. It's not good for the health to work 15 hours a day.

   e. It's bad for my legs to remain standing for 5 hours.

3. Ask your friend if:

   a. he works with Mr. Tanaka everyday.

   b. he goes to see movies with his friends sometimes.

   c. he usually studies with someone.

   d. he wants to eat supper with you.

   e. he goes home with his friend nowadays.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

4. On the basis of the following table, take turns asking and answering questions about when each person will do the things indicated:

	will go to Tokyo	will return	will go to work
Tanaka	on Monday	on Thursday	on Friday
Yamada	on Wednesday	on Sunday	on Monday
Suzuki	on Saturday	on Monday	on Tuesday
Shimizu	on Tuesday	on Friday	on Saturday

5. Orally ask your friend to come to your home for:

   a. lunch on Monday at 12 o'clock.

   b. supper on Sunday at 6 o'clock.

   c. film showing on Friday at 3 o'clock.

   d. breakfast on Saturday at 9 o'clock.

6. Tell your friend that:

   a. you eat a little at a time.

   b. you study three hours a night.

   c. you exercise one hour a day.

   d. you work six hours everyday.

7. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. How bad is it?

   b. It's this bad.

   c. Is it that bad?

   d. He came from a distant place.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. The school is in the vicinity of our house.

f. Many people don't know it.

g. I stay up till late at night.

Lesson 26

A. Perception Drill.

1.		haru	spring (season of the year)
		atatakai *or* attakai	warm (I-adj.)
	a.	Haru wa atatakai desu.	Spring is warm.
		natsu	summer
		atsui	hot (I-adj.)
		mushi-	stem of musu 'steam' (v.t.)
		mushi-atsui	sultry (I-adj.)
	b.	Natsu wa mushi-atsui desu.	Summer is sultry.
		aki	autumn, fall (season of the year)
		suzushii	cool (I-adj., used in reference primarily to weather)
	c.	Aki wa suzushii desu.	Autumn is cool.
		fuyu	winter
		samui	cold (I-adj., used in reference primarily to weather)
	d.	Fuyu wa samui desu.	Winter is cold.
2.		sakura	cherry (tree *or* blossom)
		sakimasu	formal equivalent of *saku* 'bloom' (v.i.)
	a.	Sakura wa itsu goro sakimasu ka.	About when do cherry blossoms bloom?
	b.	Haru ni sakimasu.	They bloom in spring.

Lesson 26

A. Perception Drill, continued.

3.	yuki	snow
	ame	rain
	furimasu	formal equivalent of furu 'fall' (v.i.) used in reference to what falls from the sky like rain, snow)
a.	Natsu ni yuki ga furimasu ka.	Does it snow in summer?
b.	Iie, ame wa furimasu ga, yuki wa furimasen.	No, it rains, but it doesn't snow.
4.	-gatsu	suffix to name the calendar months
	nan-gatsu	what month?
	ichi-gatsu	January
	ni-gatsu	February
	san-gatsu	March
	shi-gatsu	April
	go-gatsu	May
	roku-gatsu	June
	shichi-gatsu	July
	hachi-gatsu	August
	ku-gatsu	September
	juu-gatsu	October
	juuichi-gatsu	November
	juuni-gatsu	December

Lesson 26

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	a.	Itsu Tookyoo e ikimasu ka.	When are you going to Tokyo?
	b.	Ni-gatsu yoo-ka ni ikimasu.	I'm going on February 8.
5.		sugu	soon, immediately
		kaeru	return, come back or go back (v.i.)
		kuru	come (v.i.)
		kaette kuru	come back (v.i.)
	a.	Sugu kaette kimasu ka.	Are you coming back soon?
		owari	end
		hajime	beginning
	b.	San-gatsu no owari ka shi-gatsu no hajime ni kaette kimasu.	I'm coming back either in the end of March or in the beginning of April.
6.		shuu	week
		-shuukan	counter for the number of weeks
		is-shuukan	1 week
		ni-shuukan	2 weeks
		san-shuukan	3 weeks
		yon-shuukan	4 weeks
		go-shuukan	5 weeks
		roku-shuukan	6 weeks
		nana-shuukan	7 weeks

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		has-shuukan	8 weeks
		kyuu-shuukan	9 weeks
		jis-shuukan or jus-shuukan	10 weeks
		nan-shuukan	how many weeks?
	a.	Dewa, has-shuukan gurai Tookyoo ni imasu ne.	Then, you'll stay in Tokyo for about 8 weeks, won't you?
	b.	Ee, shichi-has-shuukan desu.	Yes, (I will be there) about 7 or 8 weeks.
7.		mada	still, yet
		yo	sentence particle for emphasis 'you know; I tell you.'
	a.	Tookyoo wa mada samui desu yo.	Tokyo is still cold, I tell you.
		to	quoting particle
		omoimasu	formal equivalent of omou 'believe' feel, suppose, guess, expect, think' (v.t.)
	b.	Ee, mada sukoshi samui to omoimasu.	Yes, I think it's still a little cold.
8.		kyuu	sudden (copula noun)
		kyuu ni	suddenly
		naru	become
		atatakaku naru	become warm, turn warm
		kuru	come

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		atatakaku natte kuru	become warm, turn warm, or begin to turn warm (Lit: come to turn warm)
	a.	Demo kyuu ni atatakaku natte kuru deshoo.	But I think it'll suddenly (begin to) turn warm.
		utsukushii	beautiful (I-adj.)
	b.	Soshite utsukushii sakura ga saku deshoo.	And beautiful cherry blossoms will probably bloom.
9.		ikimasen	don't go
		ikimasen ka	'aren't you going?' or 'would you like to go?, won't you go?'
	a.	Watakushi to issho ni ikimasen ka.	Would you like to go with me?
	b.	Ikitai n desu ga.	I want to go, but --.
	c.	Moo sukoshi tabemasen ka.	Won't you have a little more?
	d.	Moo takusan desu.	No thank you. (Lit: I've already had a lot.) That is enough.

Lesson 26

B. Dialogue.

Months and Seasons of the Year.

1. A: Moo shi-gatsu desu ne.

B: Ee. Konogoro kyuu ni atatakaku natte kimashita.

2. A: Haru desu yo. Sakura mo sugu saku deshoo ka?

B: Mada moo ichi-ni-shuukan wa sakanai deshoo. Kotoshi wa sukoshi osoi desu.

3. A: Taihen samui fuyu deshita kara, osoi no deshoo.

B: Ee, san-gatsu no hajime ni mada yuki ga sukoshi furimashita kara nee.

4. A: Fuyu ga samui to natsu ga atsui to iimasu ne.

B: Soo iimasu ga, hontoo deshoo ka. Keredomo Tookyoo no natsu wa itsu mo mushi-atsui desu yo.

5. A: Demo, ku-gatsu ni wa suzushii ja arimasen ka.

B: Ee, aki ni naru to, kyuu ni suzushiku narimasu.

6. A: Juu-gatsu no owari goro kara juuichi-gatsu no owari goro made wa, Nihon no yama wa utsukushii to omoimasu.

B: Ki no ha ga akaku natte taihen utsukushiku narimasu ne.

7. A: Ee, soo desu. Sore kara, juuni-gatsu, ichi-gatsu, ni-gatsu wa samui desu ga, Tookyoo de wa yuki wa ammari furanai desu ne.

B: Soo desu.

Lesson 28

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Ame wa nan-gatsu goro takusan furu n desu ka.

B: Roku-gatsu to ku-gatsu desu. Shichi-gatsu to hachi-gatsu wa taihen atsui desu.

9. A: Watakushi wa shichi-gatsu ni wa Izu ni ikimasu ga, anata mo watakushi to ikimasen ka.

B: Ikitai n desu ga, doo naru ka wakarimasen.

Lesson 26

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: It's already April, isn't it?

   B: Yes. It's suddenly become warm recently.

2. A: It's spring, you know. I wonder if the cherry blossoms will soon bloom, too?

   B: I don't think they will bloom one or two more weeks yet. They are a little late this year.

3. A: It was a very cold winter, so I think they are late.

   B: Yes, because it snowed a little as late as in the beginning of March. (Lit: Yes, because it still snowed a little in the beginning of March.)

4. A: They say that whenever winter is cold, summer is hot, don't they?

   B: They say so, but I wonder if it's true? But the summer in Tokyo is always sultry, you know.

5. A: Yet, it's cool in September, isn't it?

   B: Yes, it gets cool as soon as fall comes.
   (Lit: Yes, it gets cool suddenly when it becomes fall.)

6. A: I think the mountains in Japan are beautiful from about the end of October till about the end of November.

   B: Leaves turn red and become very beautiful, don't they?

7. A: Yes, that's right. And, though December, January, and February are cold, it doesn't snow very much in Tokyo, does it?

   B: That's right.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: In what months does it rain a lot?

   B: June and September. July and August are very hot.

9. A: I'm going to Izu in July, and would you like to go with me?

   B: I want to go, but I can't tell how it'll turn out.

Lesson 26

D. Grammar Notes.

1. -gatsu.

-Gatsu is combined with the Chinese series of numerals to name the calendar months, e.g.,

*ichi-gatsu	'January'	shichi-gatsu	'July'
ni-gatsu	'February'	hachi-gatsu	'August'
san-gatsu	'March'	ku-gatsu	'September'
shi-gatsu	'April'	juu-gatsu	'October'
go-gatsu	'May'	juuichi-gatsu	'November'
roku-gatsu	'June'	juuni-gatsu	'December'

nan-gatsu 'what month?'

*Shoo-gatsu 'January' is also used in place of ichi-gatsu. However, there are no other alternatives to name the calendar months in Japanese.

The particle ni (or goro, goro ni) occurs after -gatsu when the calendar months are used to indicate the time (or approximate time) at which something takes place, e.g.,

Ku-gatsu ni ikimasu.
'I'll go in September.'

Shi-gatsu goro ni kaerimasu.	'I'll return around April.'

The counter to count the number of months is -kagetsu, and this will be dealt with later.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

2. -shuukan.

-Shuukan is the counter to count the number of weeks, and it is combined primarily *with the Chinese series of numerals, e.g.,

is-shuukan	'1 week'	*nana-shuukan	'7 weeks'
ni-shuukan	'2 weeks'	has-shuukan	'8 weeks'
san-shuukan	'3 weeks'	kyuu-shuukan	'9 weeks'
*yon-shuukan	'4 weeks'	jis-shuukan or jus-shuukan	'10 weeks'
go-shuukan	'5 weeks'	nan-shuukan	'how many weeks?'
roku-shuukan	'6 weeks'		

Note however that phonetic changes take place when two successive numbers are combined:

ichi-ni-shuukan	'1 or 2 weeks'
shi-go-shuukan	'4 or 5 weeks'
roku-shichi-shuukan	'6 or 7 weeks'
shichi-has-shuukan	'7 or 8 weeks'

3. yo.

Like the particles ka and ne, the particle yo also occurs at the end of sentences. It is used to emphatically state the sentence which precedes it, and the meaning is somewhat similar to 'you know; I'm warning you!, I tell you!' in colloquial English, e.g., Ashita wa isogashi desu yo.

'We'll be busy tomorrow, you know.'
or
'You know we'll be busy tomorrow.'
or
'We'll be busy tomorrow, I'm warning you.'

Arasuka no fuyu wa samui desu yo.

'The winter in Alaska is cold, I'm warning you!'

4. TE form of verbs plus kuru.

The TE form of verbs plus kuru 'come' connotes different things depending on the verbs and the context.

a. The gradual coming into being of an action or state.

The TE form of many intransitive verbs plus kuru usually connotes 'the gradual coming into being of an action or state', e.g.,

Nihongo ga sukoshi wakatte kimashita.

'I've come to understand Japanese a little.'

Hana ga saite kimashita.

'Flowers have begun to bloom.'

Ame ga futte kimashita.

'It's started to rain.'

Ame ga futte kimasu yo.

'It'll start to rain, I'm warning you!'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Atatakaku natte kimashita.

'It's started to become warm.'

However, when 'the coming into being of an action or state' is relatively sudden or quick, the word like kyuu ni 'suddenly' may occur in the same construction, e.g.,

Ame ga kyuu ni futte kimashita.

'It's started to rain suddenly.'

Kyuu ni atatakaku natte kimashita.

'It's suddenly become warm.'

b. Direction of coming or going.

The TE form of verbs plus kuru 'come' and iku 'go' indicates that an action takes place toward and away from the speaker, respectively, e.g.,

Sensei ga kyooshitsu ni haitte kimashita.

'The instructor came into the classroom.'
(The speaker was in the classroom.)

Sensei ga kyooshitsu ni haitte ikimashita.

'The instructor went into the classroom.'
(The speaker was outside the classroom.)

Tanaka-san wa kaette kimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka came back.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tanaka-san wa kaette ikimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka went back.'

Taroo ga dete kimashita.

'Taro came out.'

Taroo ga dete ikimashita.

'Taro went out.'

Hon o motte kimashita.

'I brought the book.'

Hon o motte ikimashita.

'I took the book.'

c. Actions in series.

The TE form of verbs plus kuru 'come' or iku 'go' also indicates actions in series the last of which is 'coming' or 'going', e.g.,

Tabete kimasu.

'I'll eat and come.'

Tabete ikimasu.

'I'll eat and go.'

Itte kimasu.

'Goodbye.'

(Itte kimasu is said by a person leaving his own home or place of business, and it literally means 'I'll go and come back.' The humble equivalent of this expression is Itte mairimasu 'Goodbye'. Itte irasshai 'Goodbye' is used by a person remaining behind.)

Hon o katte kimashita.

'I went and bought the book.'
(Lit: I came having gone and bought the book.)

Sono eiga o mite kimashita.

'I went and saw that movie.'

Hon o totte kite kudasai.

'Please fetch the book.'
(Lit: Please go, get the book and come back to me.)

Note in the above three examples that the action of going is usually left unsaid.

5. --- to omoimasu.

The verb omoimasu is the formal equivalent of omou meaning 'guess, feel, suppose, expect, believe, or think', and this word does not mean 'deliberate, premeditate, ponder, consider, or think over'.

Occurring before the verb omoimasu, the particle to indicates that any utterance whatsoever which precedes it is what is 'felt, supposed, expected, believed, or thought'.

Examples:

Tanaka-san wa ii sensei da to omoimasu.

'I think Mr. Tanaka is a good teacher.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kono jidoosha wa sukoshi takai to omoimasu.

'I think this car is a little expensive.'

Yamada-san wa ashita iku to omoimasu.

'I believe Mr. Yamada is going tomorrow.'

Ashita wa ame ga furanai to omoimasu.

'I guess it won't rain tomorrow.'
or
'I don't think it'll rain tomorrow.'

6. - masen ka.

The non-past negative question construction is commonly used to express the speaker's invitation, and its English equivalent is 'won't you ---?', 'would you like to ---?', or 'would you ---?'.

Examples:

Watakushi to issho ni ikimasen ka.

'Won't you go with me?'

Ashita issho ni gorufu o yarimasen ka.

'Would you like to play golf with me tomorrow?'

E. Exercises and Conversations.

1. On the basis of the following table, take turns asking and answering when each person did or will do the actions indicated:

	went to Tokyo	will return	will come to America
Tanaka	on April 10	on May 3	on June 5
Yamada	on September 8	on November 20	on March 2
Suzuki	on October 4	on January 9	on July 14
Kawata	on December 6	on February 7	on August 24

2. Tell your friend that:

   a. you think it won't rain tomorrow.

   b. you expect Mr. Tanaka to come home the day after tomorrow.

   c. you believe this job will take 2 or 3 weeks.

   d. you guess Mr. Yamada won't come.

   e. you think this is a little expensive.

3. Warn your friend that:

   a. that house is old.

   b. this is hot.

   c. that street is narrow.

   d. it's small.

   e. it's not over there, but here.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

4. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'an action is now happening' or 'the state resulting from an action now exists' to the corresponding sentence indicating 'the gradual coming into being of an action or state':

    a. Ame ga futte imasu.

    b. Taihen atatakai desu.

    c. Kirei na hana ga saite imasu.

    d. Jidoosha ga furui desu.

    e. Wakatte imasu.

    f. Soto wa kurai desu.

5. Making whatever changes are necessary, change each of the following sentences ending in a verb of motion to the corresponding sentence indicating that the motion took place first toward you and second away from you:

    a. Yamamoto-san wa uchi e kaerimashita.

    b. Tanaka-san wa jimushitsu ni hairimashita.

    c. Kodomo-tachi wa soto ni demashita.

    d. Suzuki-san wa arukimashita.

6. Ask your friend to:

    a. go and buy a newspaper.

    b. take this to Mr. Tanaka.

    c. fetch your letters.

    d. go and mail your letters.

    e. go and close the door.

    f. bring your shoes.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

7. Invite your friend:

   a. to go to see a movie with you.

   b. to come to your home tonight.

   c. to eat a little more.

   d. to go home with you.

   e. to play golf with you on Saturday.

8. Describe the weather of the areas in which you used to live.

Lesson 27

A. Perception Drill.

1.		umi	sea, ocean
		hoo	direction, side
		umi no hoo	toward the sea
	a.	Umi no hoo e ikimashoo.	Let's go to the seaside. (Lit: Let's go toward the sea.)
	b.	Sore wa ii desu nee.	That's good.
2.		o	particle indicating the place of motion
	a.	Dono michi o ikimashoo ka̅.	Which road shall we take? (Lit: Which road shall we go on?)
	b.	Kono michi o ikimashoo.	Let's take this road. (Lit: Let's go on this road.)
		sampo	a leisurely walk, strolling
		sampo o suru or sampo-suru	take a walk (v.i.)
	c.	Doko o sampo-shimashoo ka.	Where shall we stroll?
		hama	beach
		soba	neighborhood, vicinity, beside, side
		bura-bura	leisurely
	d.	Hama no soba o sampo-shimasho̅o.	Let's take a walk by the beach.
		toorimasu	formal equivalent of tooru 'pass, pass through, go along' (v.i.)

Lesson 27

A. Perception Drill, continued.

e.	Gakkoo no soba o tootte, ikimashoo.	Let's go along the school. (Lit: Let's pass by the school and go.)
3.	shuu	week
	senshuu	last week
	konshuu	this week
	raishuu	next week
	saraishuu	the week after next
	shuumatsu	weekend
a.	Senshuu no shuumatsu ni wa doko e ikimashita ka.	Where did you go during the last weekend?
b.	Yama e ikimashita.	We went to the mountain.
c.	Raishuu no shuumatsu ni wa doko e ikimasu ka.	Where are you going during the next weekend?
d.	Mata onaji yama e ikimasu.	We are going to the same mountain again.
4.	kazoku	family
	gokazoku	exalted equivalent of kazoku
	tsurete	TE form of tsureru 'take' (animate things only, v.t.)
	tsurete iku	'go with' (animate things only)
	tsurete kuru	'come with' (animate things only)

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		irasshaimasu	exalted equivalent of ikimasu 'go', kimasu 'come', and imasu 'is, am, are'
		mairimasu	humble equivalent of ikimasu 'go' and kimasu 'come'
	a.	Gokazoku o tsurete irasshaimasu ka.	Are you going to take your family along?
	b.	Hai, kazoku o tsurete mairimasu.	Yes, I'm going to my family along.
5.		mai-	prefix meaning 'each' (used in reference to time)
		mainichi	everyday
		maishuu	every week
		mainen or maitoshi	every year
	a.	Mainen irasshaimasu ka.	Do you go every year?
	b.	Hai, maitoshi mairimasu.	Yes, I go every year.
6.		okusan	your (or his) wife
		kanai	my wife
	a.	Dewa, okusan ya kodomo-san o tsurete irasshaimasu ne.	Then, you are going to take your wife and children, aren't you?
	b.	Hai, kanai ya kodomo o tsurete mairimasu.	Yes, I'm going to take wife and children.
7.	a.	Sono yama wa donna tokoro desu ka.	What sort of place is that mountain?

Lesson 27

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	mizu-umi	lake
	ka	mosquito
	hae	fly (insect)
b.	Kono yama ni wa mizu-umi ga atte, ka ya hae mo hotondo imasen.	There is a lake and there are hardly any mosquitoes and flies in this mountain.
	mattaku	really, truly, completely
c.	Mattaku ii tokoro desu ne.	It's really a nice place, isn't it?
	konde	TE form of komu 'is crowded, is jammed' (v.i.)
a.	Kyoo wa hama wa konde iru deshoo ne.	I wonder if the beach is crowded today?
	natsu-yasumi	summer vacation
	kaze	wind
	shi	a conjunctive particle to connect clauses 'and'
	node or nde	a conjunctive particle meaning 'because, since'
b.	Gakkoo wa natsu-yasumi da shi, kyoo wa shuumatsu da shi, kaze wa nai shi, tenki wa ii node, hama wa taihen konde iru to omoimasu.	I think the beach is very crowded because the school is out for summer vacation, and this is a weekend, and there is no wind, and also the weather is nice.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

9.	choodo	just, exactly
	suru koto	a thing to do
	nanni mo nai	there is nothing, I have nothing
	nanni mo suru koto ga nai	I have nothing to do
	taikutsu	boredom (copula noun)
	taikutsu-suru	is bored.
a.	Choodo nanni mo suru koto wa nai shi, taikutsu-shite iru shi, ii tenki na node, ikitai to omoimasu.	I want to go because just now I have nothing to do, also I'm bored, and also it's a good weather.
	issho ni	together
b.	Ja issho ni ikimashoo.	Then, let's go together.

Lesson 27

B. Dialogue.

Weekends.

1. A: Hontoo ni ii otenki desu ne. Doko ka e sampo ni ikimasen ka.

   B: Sore wa ii desu ne. Choodo nanni mo suru koto wa nai shi, taikutsu-shite iru n desu kara.

2. A: Dochira e ikimashoo ka.

   B: Saa, umi no hoo wa doo deshoo ka.

3. A: Kyoo wa hama ga ii deshoo ne.

   B: Ee, kaze wa nai shi, atatakai node, hama o bura-bura sampo-shimashoo.

4. A: Shuu-matsu na node, hama wa konde iru deshoo ne.

   B: Watakushi wa senshuu no do-yoo ni hama no soba o toorimashita ga, sono toki wa amari konde imasen deshita.

5. A: Demo konshuu kara gakkoo ga natsu-yasumi ni narimashita kara, konde iru to omoimasu.

   B: Mattaku gakkoo ga natsu-yasumi ni narimashita nee. Watakushi-tachi mo saraishuu kara ni-shuukan no yasumi o moraimasu.

6. A: Sore wa ii desu nee. Gokazoku o tsurete, doko ka e irasshaimasu ka.

   B: Kanai mo kodomo-tachi mo yama ni ikitai to itte imasu.

7. A: Donna tokoro desu ka.

   B: Mizu-umi ga atte, atsuku mo nai shi, ka ya hae mo hotondo inai node, taihen ii tokoro desu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Anata wa okusan ya kodomo-san o tsurete, mainen soko ni irasshaimasu ka.

B: Ee, maitoshi mairimasu.

9. A: Kotoshi mo irasshaimasu ka.

B: Ee, raishuu no owari ka, saraishuu no hajime ni dekaketai to omotte imasu.

10. A: Soko wa koko kara tooi desu ka.

B: Iie, jidoosha de san-jikan gurai shika kakarimasen.

11. A: Watakushi mo ikitai n desu ga.

B: Issho ni mairimashoo. Ii tokoro desu yo.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What a beautiful day! Won't you go somewhere for a walk?

   B: That's good. Because I don't have anything to do and I'm bored just at this moment.

2. A: Where shall we go?

   B: Well, I wonder how the seaside is?

3. A: I think the beach is fine today, don't you?

   B: Yes. There's no wind and it's warm, so let's take a leisurely walk along the beach.

4. A: This is a weekend, and I think the beach is crowded, don't you?

   B: I passed near the beach last Saturday, and it wasn't crowded very much then.

5. A: But the school's out for summer vacation, so I guess it's crowded.

   B: Really the school's out for summer vacation. I'll get a two-week vacation from the week after next, too.

6. A: That's good. Are you going anywhere with your family?

   B: Both my wife and children are saying that they want to go to the mountain.

7. A: What sort of place is it?

   B: There is a lake, and it's not hot and there are hardly any mosquitoes and flies. So it's a very good place.

Lesson 27

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Do you go there every year with your wife and children?

B: Yes, we go every year.

9. A: Are you going this year, too?

B: Yes, I'm hoping to start out either the next weekend or the early part of the week after.

10. A: Is that place far from here?

B: No, it takes only about three hours by car.

11. A: I want to go, too, but --- .

B: Let's go together. It's a nice place, you know.

Lesson 27

D. Grammar Notes.

1. o 'along, through'.

Occurring after a word of place, the particle o indicates the place along or through which the locomotive action takes place, e.g.,

Kono michi o ikimashoo.
'Let's go on this road.'
Gakkoo no soba o toorimashita.
'I passed by the school.'
Mizuumi no chikaku o sampo-shimashita.
'I took a walk near a lake.'

2. tsurete iku and tsurete kuru.

Tsurete iku and tsurete kuru mean to 'take' and 'bring' animate things, respectively. Motte iku 'take (inanimate things)' and motte kuru 'bring (inanimate things)' were previously introduced.

Compare:

Watakushi o tsurete itte kudasai.
'Please take me (with you).'
Kore o motte itte kudasai.
'Please take this (with you).'

Yamada-san wa okusan o tsurete irasshaimashita.
'Mr. Yamada went (or came) with his wife.
or
'Mr. Yamada took (or brought) his wife with him.'

Yamada-san wa kaban o motte irasshaimashita.

'Mr. Yamada went (or came) with his briefcase.'

or

'Mr. Yamada took (or brought) his briefcase with him.'

3. node 'because, since'.

Like the particle kara, node occurs at the end of a clause or sentence with the meaning 'because, since'. In most cases, kara and node are interchangeable, but kara emphasizes the cause whereas node emphasizes the effect.

Compare:

Ame ga futte iru kara, doko e mo ikitaku wa arimasen.

'I don't want to go anywhere because it's raining.'

Ame ga futte iru node, doko e mo ikitaku wa arimasen.

'It's raining so I don't want to go anywhere.'

Kyoo wa isogashii kara, gorufu wa dekimasen.

'I can't play golf because I'm busy today.'

Kyoo wa, isogashii node, gorufu wa dekimasen.

'I'm busy today, so I can't play golf.'

Sore wa taihen taisetsu na mono da* kara, sugu tsukue no ue ni oitoite kudasai.

'That's a very important thing, so please put it on the desk immediately.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

> Sore wa taihen taisetsu no mono na* node,
> sugu tsukue no ue ni oite okimasu.
>
> 'I'll put it on the desk immediately because that's a very important thing.'

*Note that, after a noun and before node, na instead of the copula desu or da occurs. Node may be shortened to nde in colloquial speech.

4. shi 'and also'.

Shi is a conjunctive particle 'and also' to connect clauses which have no particular sequence in their arrangement. The verb, I-adjective, or copula at the end of the clause preceding shi may be either formal or informal.

Examples:

> Kyoo wa nichi-yoo da shi, tenki wa ii shi, taikutsu-shite iru node, doko ka e sampo ni dekaketai desu.
>
> 'I want to go somewhere for a walk because today is Sunday, and the weather is nice, and also I'm bored.'
>
> Ame wa futte iru shi, kanai wa byooki da shi, taihen isogashii node, doko e mo ikitaku wa arimasen.
>
> 'I don't want to go anywhere because it's raining, and my wife is sick, and also I'm very busy.'

The last of the clauses connected by shi may sometimes be followed by shi and suru as in the following example:

> Kyoo wa nichi-yoo da *shi*, tenki wa ii *shi*, taikutsu-shite iru *shi suru node*, doko ka e sampo ni dekaketai desu.
>
> 'I want to go somewhere for a walk because today is Sunday, and the weather is nice, and also I'm bored.'

5. *-tai to omoimasu*.

To omoimasu 'I think --- ' often occurs after a verb ending in *-tai* 'I want to do so-and-so'. There is little difference in meaning between *-tai desu* and *-tai to omoimasu*.

Compare:

> Raishuu no hajime ni *dekaketai desu*.
>
> 'I want to start out early next week.'
>
> Raishuu no hajime ni *dekaketai to omoimasu*.
>
> 'I want to start out early next week.'

However, when the *-tai* form of a verb is followed by *omotte imasu* instead of *omoimasu*, the combination is interpreted to mean 'I'm hoping, I'm wishing, I'm wanting (to do so-and-so).'

6. *nanni mo suru koto ga nai*.

Suru koto means 'a thing to do', and *nanni mo nai* means 'I have nothing' or 'there is nothing'. In the

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

construction nanni mo suru koto ga nai, nanni mo is used in apposition to suru koto or suru koto limits the meaning of nanni mo. It is important to note that nanni mo precedes the limiting phrase suru koto. The identical word order also occurs when an indefinite expression (a question word plus ka) is followed by a limiting phrase.

Examples:

Nanni mo suru koto ga arimasen.
'I have nothing to do.'
Nani ka suru koto ga arimasu ka.
'Do you have anything to do?'

Nanni mo taberu mono ga arimasen.
'I have nothing to eat.'
Nani ka taberu mono o kaimashoo.
'Let's buy something to eat.'

Nanni mo yomu mono ga arimasen.
'I have nothing to read.'
Nani ka yomu mono no hoo ga ii deshoo.
'I think something to read is better.'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Connect the first two sentences in each group by using the particle shi and use them as the reasons for the third sentence.

   a. (1) Ka mo imasen.
      (2) Hae mo imasen.
      (3) Taihen ii tokoro desu.

   b. (1) Kyoo wa yasumi desu.
      (2) Otenki wa ii desu.
      (3) Sampo ni dekakemasu.

   c. (1) Okane wa arimasen.
      (2) Takai desu.
      (3) Kaitaku wa arimasen.

   d. (1) Koko wa konde imasu.
      (2) Taihen kitanai desu.
      (3) Doko ka hoka no tokoro e ikimashoo.

   e. (1) Kazoku wa imasen.
      (2) Gakkoo wa yasumi desu.
      (3) Taikutsu-shite imasu.

2. Tell your friend that:

   a. soldiers are marching on the hill.

   b. two young people are passing by the school.

   c. a tank is passing under a large tree.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

d. your family is walking along the beach.

e. you passed through Yokohama last week.

f. you walk home on this road.

g. Mr. Tanaka walked along the lake to school.

3. On the basis of the following table, take turns asking and answering whom or what each person took or bought with:

	came to America	went to New York	returned to Japan
Tanaka	with his wife	with a lot of money	with a new car
Yamada	with his family	with only his wife	with his wife and friend
Suzuki	with his children	with only one child	with many English books
Kaneko	with many Japanese books	with his friends	with his friend's child

4. Making whatever changes are necessary, replace kara with node of each of the following sentences:

a. Kyoo wa otenki ga ii kara, takusan no hito ga sampo shite imasu.

b. Kyoo wa ii otenki da kara, soto de undoo-shimasu.

c. Izu wa taihen ii tokoro da kara, maitoshi mairimasu.

d. Ashita wa kyuujitsu da kara, uchi ni imasu.

e. Sensei wa byooki da kara, uchi de nete irasshaimasu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

5. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I'll do so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'I'm hoping to do so-and-so':

   a. Watakushi wa Izu ni ikimasu.

   b. Raishuu wa uchi ni kaerimasu.

   c. Furansugo o naraimasu.

   d. Shuumatsu ni wa gorufu o yarimasu.

   e. Saraishuu no do-yoobi ni wa kazoku o tsurete umi ni ikimasu.

6. Given below are pairs of sentences. Combine the two sentences of each pair into a single sentence:

   a. (1) Nanni mo arimasen.

      (2) Taberu mono ga arimasen.

   b. (1) Nani ka arimasu ka.

      (2) Miru mono ga arimasu ka.

   c. (1) Suru koto ga arimasen.

      (2) Nanni mo arimasen.

   d. (1) Doko ka e ikimashoo.

      (2) Ii tokoro e ikimashoo.

   e. (1) Dare ka kimashita.

      (2) Ooki na hito ga kimashita.

7. Take turns asking and aswering questions regarding what you and your friends are hoping to do this weekend.

ED0 34975

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

WEST COAST BRANCH

PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

РУССКИЙ
СРПСКОХРВАТСКИ
華 語
SHQIP
MAGYAR
日 本 語
TÜRKÇE
PORTUGUÊS
فارسی
ROMÂNĂ
УКРАЇНСЬКА
ITALIANO
BAHASA INDONESIA

JAPANESE

12-WEEK COURSE

VOLUME III
LESSONS 28-41

БЪЛГАРСКИ
POLSKI
粵 語
ČESKY
ΕΛΛΗΝΙΚΑ
한 국 어
ESPAÑOL
FRANÇAIS
العربية
ภาษาไทย
မြန်မာ ဘာ သာ
DEUTSCH
TIẾNG VIỆT NAM

KISWAHILI

U.S. ARMY

AL 002 224

ED0 34975

JAPANESE

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS ~~COPYRIGHTED~~ MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY Major Bobby L. Moore
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE ~~COPYRIGHT~~ OWNER."

12-Week Course

Volume III

Lessons 28-41

November 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
West Coast Branch
Presidio of Monterey, California

CONTENTS

Lesson	Situation	Page
28	Days of the Month	1
29	Tanaka Family	18
30	Tanaka Family, Continued . . .	37
31	Illness	54
32	Army Aviation	71
33	Combat Engineer	89
34	Communications	114
35	Medical Troops	134
36	Supply	158
37	Airborne Units	179
38	Armored	196
39	Map Reading	220
40	Map Reading, Continued	240
41	Patrol	254

Lesson 28

A. Perception Drill.

1.		-kagetsu	a counter to count months
		ik-kagetsu	1 month
		ni-kagetsu	2 months
		san-kagetsu	3 months
		yon-kagetsu	4 months
		go-kagetsu	5 months
		rok-kagetsu	6 months
		shichi-kagetsu or nana-kagetsu	7 months
		hachi-kagetsu or hak-kagetsu	8 months
		ku-kagetsu or kyuu-kagetsu	9 months
		jik-kagetsu or juk-kagetsu	10 months
		nan-kagetsu	how many months?
		ni-kagetsu han	$2\frac{1}{2}$ months
	a.	Nihon ni nan-kagetsu imashita ka.	How many months were you in Japan?
	b.	San-kagetsu imashita.	I was there three months.
2.	a.	Anata wa ashita Izu e ikimasu ka.	Are you going to Izu tomorrow?
	b.	Hai, ikimasu.	Yes, I am (going).
	c.	Sore dewa, watakushi mo ikimashoo.	Then, I guess I'll go, too.

Lesson 28

A. Perception Drill, continued.

d.	Kore o sukoshi kudasai.	Please give me some of this.
e.	Kore o sukoshi agemasu.	I'll give you some of this.
f.	Kore o sukoshi agemashoo.	I guess I'll give you some of this.
	tsuki	month or the moon
	hi	day or the sun
g.	Tsuki no hi no namae o oshiete kudasai.	Please teach me the names of the days of the month.
h.	Oshiete agemashoo.	I guess I'll teach you.

3.	-me	the suffix used to change a cardinal number to its corresponding ordinal
	ichi-bam-me	1st
	ni-bam-me	2nd
	sam-bam-me	3rd
	yom-bam-me	4th
	go-bam-me	5th
	roku-bam-me	6th
	nana-bam-me or shichi-bam-me	7th
	hachi-bam-me	8th
	ku-bam-me or kyuu-bam-me	9th
	juu-bam-me	10th

Lesson 28

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		nam-bam-me	which place?
	a.	Tsuki no yom-bam-me to hachi-bam-me no hi wa nan to iimasu ka.	How do you say the fourth and the eighth days of the month?
	b.	Yok-ka to yoo-ka desu.	They say YOK-KA and YOOKA.
4.		tsuitachi	the first day of the month
		jun	order, turn, sequence
		jun ni	in order
	a.	Tsuitachi kara too-ka made jun ni itte kudasai.	Please say from the first day to the tenth day of the month in order.
	b.	Tsuitachi, futsu-ka, mik-ka, yok-ka, itsu-ka, mui-ka, nano-ka, yoo-ka, kokono-ka, too-ka desu.	They are the 1st, the 2nd, the 3rd, the 4th, the 5th, the 6th, the 7th, the 8th, the 9th, and the 10th.
		nan-nichi	what date? or how many days?
		hatsu-ka	the twentieth of the month or 20 days
	c.	Kyoo wa nan-nichi desu ka.	What date is today?
	d.	Hatsu-ka desu.	The twentieth.
5.		ichi-nichi	one day
		juuyok-ka	14 days or the 14th day of the month

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		nijuu yok-ka	24 days or the 24th day of the month
	a.	Anata wa Nihon ni nan-nichi imashita ka.	How many days were you in Japan?
	b.	Ichi-nichi shika imasen deshita.	I was there only one day.
	c.	Buraun-san wa juuyok-ka imashita.	Mr. Brown was there 14 days.
6.	a.	Is-shuukan ni wa nan-nichi arimasu ka.	How many days are there in one week?
	b.	Nano-ka arimasu.	There are 7 days.
		kazoete	TE form of kazoeru 'count' (v.t.)
	c.	Kazoete kudasai.	Please count.
	d.	Ichi-nichi, futsu-ka, mik-ka, yok-ka, itsu-ka, mui-ka, nano-ka.	One day, two days, three days, four days, five days, six days, seven days.
7.		tsugi	next
		tsugi no hi	next day, the following day
	a.	Too-ka no tsugi no hi wa nan to iimasu ka.	How do you say the day next to the tenth?
	b.	Juuichi-nichi to iimasu.	We say JUUICHI-NICHI.
8.		karendaa	calendar
		goran or goran-nasai	please look (v.t.)

Lesson 28

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Kono karendaa o goran-nasai.	Please look at this calendar.
b.	San-gatsu no karendaa desu.	It's a calendar for the month of March.
9.	itte	TE form of iu 'say'
	itte goran-nasai	try saying ---, say --- and see, see if you can say ---
a.	Tsuki no hi no namae o jun ni itte goran-nasai.	Please try saying the names of the days of the month in order. or Please see if you can say the names of the days of the month in order.
b.	Itte mimasu.	I'll try saying them.
c.	Kore o tabete goran-nasai.	Please try eating this. or Please eat this and see. or Please taste this.
d.	Tabete mimasu.	I'll try eating it. or I'll eat it and see. or I'll taste it.

Lesson 28

B. Dialogue.

Days of the Month

1. A: Ik-kagetsu ni wa nan-nichi arimasu ka.

   B: Sanjuu-nichi ka sanjuu ichi-nichi arimasu.

2. A: Keredomo ni-gatsu wa mijikai tsuki desu ne.

   B: Ee, ni-gatsu ni wa nijuu hachi-nichi shika arimasen.

3. A: Kyoo wa tsuki no hajime no hi kara owari no hi made no namae o oshiete kudasai.

   B: Ee, oshiete agemashoo. Dewa kono karendaa o goran-nasai. Miemasu ka.

3 - GATSU						
NICHI	GETSU	KA	SUI	MOKU	KIN	DO
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30	31		

4. A: Ee, miemasu.

   B: Kyoo wa yoo-ka desu. Kinoo wa nano-ka de, ototoi wa mui-ka deshita. Ashita wa kokono-ka de, asatte wa too-ka desu.

5. A: Tsuki no hajime no hi wa nan to iimasu ka.

   B: Tsuitachi to iimasu ga, aru hito wa ichi-jitsu to mo iimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

6. A: Ni-bam-me, sam-bam-me no hi wa?

B: Ni-bam-me no hi wa futsu-ka de, sam-bam-me no hi wa mik-ka desu. Sore kara yok-ka, itsu-ka desu. Wakarimasu ka.

7. A: Ee, yoku wakarimasu.

B: Dewa tsuitachi kara too-ka made jun ni itte goran-nasai.

8. A: Ee, itte mimashoo. Tsuitachi, futsu-ka, mik-ka, yok-ka, itsu-ka, mui-ka, nano-ka, yoo-ka, kokono-ka, too-ka.

B: Yoku dekimashita.

9. A: Too-ka no tsugi no hi wa nan to iimasu ka.

B: Too-ka kara tsugi wa yasashii desu. Juuichi-bam-me no hi wa juuichi-nichi, juuni-bam-me no hi wa juuni-nichi, juusam-bam-me no hi wa juusan-nichi nado to iimasu. Keredomo juuyom-bam-me to, nijuu-bam-me to, nijuu yom-bam-me no hi no name wa chigaimasu.

10. A: Nan to iimasu ka.

B: Juuyok-ka, hatsu-ka, nijuu yok-ka to iimasu.

11. A: Hi o kazoeru no ni tsuitachi,futsu-ka, mik-ka nado to iimasu ka.

B: Tsuitachi dake wa tsukaimasen ga, hoka no wa hi o kazoeru no ni mo tsukaimasu. Ichi-nichi no toki ni wa ichi-nichi to iimasu.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: How many days are there in a month?

   B: There are 30 or 31 days.

2. A: But February is a short month, isn't it?

   B: Yes, there are only 28 days in February.

3. A: Please teach me the names of the days from the first to the last of the month today.

   B: Yes, I'll teach you. Then, look at this calendar, please. Can you see it?

MARCH						
SUN	MON	TUE	WED	THU	FRI	SAT
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30	31		

4. A: Yes, I can.

   B: Today is the eighth. Yesterday was the seventh, and the day before yesterday, the sixth. Tomorrow is the nineth and the day after tomorrow, the tenth.

5. A: What is the first of the month called?

   B: TSUITACHI. But some people call it ICHI-JITSU, too.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

6. A: How about the second and the third days?

B: The second day is FUTSU-KA, and the third day, MIK-KA. And then YOK-KA and ITSU-KA. Is it clear?

7. A: Yes, it's very clear.

B: Then, try saying from the first to the tenth in order.

8. A: Yes, I'll try. TSUITACHI, FUTSU-KA, MIK-KA, YOK-KA, ITSU-KA, MUI-KA, NANO-KA, YOO-KA, KOKONO-KA, TOO-KA.

B: Very good.

9. A: How do you say the day following the tenth?

B: It's easy after the tenth. The eleventh day is JUUICHI-NICHI: the twelfth day, JUUNI-NICHI; the thirteenth day, JUUSAN-NICHI; and so on. But the names of the fourteenth, the twentieth, and the twenty-fourth days are different.

10. A: What are they called?

B: JUUYOK-KA, HATSU-KA, and NIJUU YOK-KA.

11. A: Do you say TSUITACHI, FUTSU-KA, MIK-KA, and so on to count days?

B: The only one we don't use is TSUITACHI, and we use others to count days, too. When it's one day, we say ICHI-NICHI.

Lesson 28

D. Grammar Notes.

1. -kagetsu.

-Kagetsu is the counter for counting months. It is combined primarily with the Chinese series of numerals, e.g.,

ik-kagetsu	'1 month'	shichi-kagetsu or nana-kagetsu	'7 months'
ni-kagetsu	'2 months'	hachi-kagetsu or hak-kagetsu	'8 months'
san-kagetsu	'3 months'	ku-kagetsu or kyuu-kagetsu	'9 months'
yon-kagetsu	'4 months'	jik-kagetsu or juk-kagetsu	'10 months'
go-kagetsu	'5 months'	nan-kagetsu	'how many months?'
rok-kagetsu	'6 months'	ni-kagetsu han	'2½ months'

2. -mashoo.

As was previously described, the -mashoo form of verbs occurs in sentences meaning 'let's do so-and-so', and in questions meaning 'shall I do so-and-so?' or 'shall we do so-and-so?'. The -mashoo form also occurs sometimes in statements meaning 'I guess I'll do so-and-so'. In other words, the -mashoo form is sometimes used to formally express the speaker's willingness to do something by way of suggestion whereas the -masu form is used to formally express the speaker's definite willingness.

Lesson 28

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Compare:

Kore o agemashoo.
'I guess I'll give you this.'
Kore o agemasu.
'I'll give you this.'

Watakushi ga ikimashoo.
'I guess I'll go.'
Watakushi ga ikimasu.
'I'll go.'

3. TE form of verbs plus *ageru*.

As was introduced previously, *ageru* occurs after the TE form of verbs with the meaning 'one renders *services* to someone other than the speaker', e.g.,

Michi o *oshiete* *agemasu*.
'I'll show you the way.'
Michio o *oshiete* *agemashoo*.
'I guess I'll show you the way.'
Michio o oshiete agemashita.
'I showed him the way.'

E o *kaite* *agemasu*.
'I'll draw a picture for you.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

E o kaite agemashoo.

'I guess I'll draw a picture for you.'

E o kaite agemashita.

'I drew a picture for him.'

4. -me.

-Me is the suffix used to change a cardinal number to its corresponding ordinal.

Examples:

Cardinal		Ordinal	
sam-ban	'number 3'	sam-bam-me	'third in a series'
juu-ban	'number 10'	juu-bam-me	'tenth in a series'
ni-jikan	'2 hours'	ni-jikam-me	'the second hour'
go-jikan	'5 hours'	go-jikam-me	'the fifth hour'
yon-kagetsu	'4 months'	yon-kagetsu-me	'the 4th month'
ku-kagetsu	'9 months'	ku-kagetsu-me	'the 9th month'
futsu-ka	'2 days'	futsu-ka-me	'the second day'
mui-ka	'6 days'	mui-ka-me	'the sixth day'
mittsu	'three (things)'	mittsu-me	'the third (one)'
yottsu	'four (things)'	yottsu-me	'the fourth one'
ni-shuukan	'2 weeks'	ni-shuukam-me	'the second week'
san-shuukan	'3 weeks'	san-shuukam-me	'the third week'

Lesson 28

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

5. TE form of verbs plus *goran-nasai*.

Goran-nasai means 'please see' or 'please look', e.g.,

Ano yama o goran-nasai.

'Please look at that mountain.'

Migi no hoo o goran-nasai.

'Please look to your right.'

or

'Please look toward the right.'

However, occurring after the TE form of verbs, *goran-nasai* means 'please do so-and-so and see' *or* 'please try doing so-and-so', e.g.,

Aruite goran-nasai.

'Please walk and see.'

or

'Please try walking.'

Yonde goran-nasai.

'Please read it and see.'

or

'Please try reading it.'

Kazoete goran-nasai.

'Please count them and see.'

or

'Please try counting them.'

Tabete goran-nasai.

'Please eat it and see.'

or

'Please try eating it.'

Lesson 28

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Minasai may occur in place of goran-nasai with the same meaning, but the former is more direct and less polite than the latter.

When similar statements are made in reference to the speaker, miru instead of goran-nasai is used, e.g.,

Aruite mimasu.

'I'll walk and see.'
or
'I'll try walking.'

Yonde mimasu.

'I'll read it and see.'
or
'I'll try reading it.'

Kazoete mimasu.

'I'll count them and see.'
or
'I'll try counting them.'

Tabete mimasu.

'I'll eat it and see.'
or
'I'll try eating it.'

Goran instead of goran-nasai may occur with the same meaning. But the former is less formal than the latter, e.g.,

Tabete goran.

'Please eat it and see.'
or
'Please try eating it.'

Lesson 28

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Respond to each of the following questions or requests by saying 'I guess I'll do so-and-so':

   a. Watakushi wa ashita Yokohama e ikimasu ga, issho ni ikimasen ka.

   b. Dare ka kore o sensei no tokoro e motte itte kudasai.

   c. Komban wa kanai ga isogashii desu kara, ashita no ban ni irasshaimasen ka.

   d. Tanaka-san wa byooki desu ga, tegami o kakimasen ka.

   e. Kono jidoosha o kaimasen ka.

   f. Dare ka mado o akete kudasaimasen ka.

2. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions:

   a. Tanaka-san ni Eigo no hon o katte agemashita ka.

   b. Buraun-san ni Nihongo o oshiete agemasu ka.

   c. Komban Yamamoto-san o eiga ni tsurete itte agemasu ka.

   d. Okusan ni nani ka katte agemashita ka.

   e. Kodomo ni hon o yonde yarimashita ka.

3. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I'll do so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'I'll do so-and-so and see' or 'I try doing so-and-so':

   a. Kono hon o yomimasu.

   b. Nihongo de kazoemasu.

   c. Tsuitachi kara too-ka made jun ni iimasu.

   d. Nihongo de tegami o kakimasu.

   e. Kono michi o kaerimasu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

f. Nihongo de hanashimasu.

g. Sukiyaki o tabemasu.

h. Hako o akemasu.

i. Izu e ikimasu.

j. Uchi e kaerimasu.

4. On the basis of the following table, take turns asking and answering how long each person will do so-and-so:

	will study Japanese	will stay here
Buraun	12 weeks	3 months
Sumisu	3 months	15 weeks
Gurin	6 months	7 months

5. Express the following in Japanese:

a. I'll be in Japan 9 months.

b. I studied Japanese only two months.

c. I came here a month ago.

d. I became a captain about three months ago.

e. Mr. Yamada has been sick in bed for about four months.

6. On the basis of the following teaching schedule, ask and then answer who teaches each hour:

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

Hour Day	1st	2nd	3rd	4th
Mon	Yamada	Tanaka	Suzuki	Sasaki
Tue	Yamada	Suzuki	Tanaka	Sasaki
Wed	Yamada	Tanaka	Suzuki	Sasaki
Thu	Yamada	Suzuki	Tanaka	Sasaki
Fri	Yamada	Tanaka	Suzuki	Sasaki

7. Assume that your friend has never experienced each of the following things. Politely tell him to try it and see:

   a. writing a letter in Japanese.

   b. eating SASHIMI.

   c. seeing a Japanese movie.

   d. going to Japan.

   e. playing golf.

   f. taking a walk along the beach.

Lesson 29

A. Perception Drill.

1.	musuko	son
a.	Taroo to Jiroo wa watakushi no musuko desu.	Taro and Jiro are my sons.
	musume	daughter
b.	Hanako-san to Sumie-san wa tomodachi no musume-san desu.	Hanako and Sumie are my friend's daughters.
2.	choonan	the eldest son
	jinan	the second son
a.	Taroo wa choonan de, Jiroo wa jinan desu.	Taro is the eldest son, and Jiro is the second son.
	choojo	the eldest daughter
	jijo	the second daughter
b.	Hanako-san wa choojo de, Sumie-san wa jijo desu.	Hanako is his eldest daughter, and Sumie is his second daughter.
	ko	child
	ue no ko	older child
	shita no ko	younger child
	ichi-ban ue	very top, oldest, eldest
	otoko	boy, man, male
	onna	girl, woman, female
	otoko no ko	boy
	onna no ko	girl

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	c.	Ichi-ban ue no otoko no ko wa choonan de, ichi-ban ue no onna no ko wa choojo desu.	The eldest boy is the eldest son, and the eldest girl is the eldest daughter.
3.		totemo	very much
		kawaii	cute, lovely (I-adj.)
		ojoo-san	your (his) daughter
		botchan	your (his) son
	a.	Sumie-san wa totemo kawaii ojoo-san desu.	Sumie is a very cute girl.
		akamboo	baby, infant
		te ga iru	need care and attention
	b.	Jiroo wa mada akamboo de, te ga irimasu.	Jiro is a baby yet, and requires care.
		totemo dekimasen	can't possibly do
	c.	Jiroo wa mada totemo aruku koto wa dekimasen.	Jiro can't possibly walk yet.
4.		taku	home
		otaku	his (your) home (exalted equivalent of taku)
		jochuu	maid
	a.	Otaku ni wa jochuu-san ga imasu ka.	Is there a maid at your home?
		ie	house
	b.	Hai, ie ga ookii shi, isogashii node, jochuu ga hitori imasu.	Yes, there is one maid because our house is large and I'm busy.

Lesson 29

A. Perception Drill, continued.

5.	shujin	house-holder, master, husband
	goshujin	her (your) husband (exalted equivalent of shujin)
	hataraite irassharu	is working (exalted equivalent of hataraite iru)
a.	Goshujin wa mainichi hataraite irassharu no desu ka.	Is your husband working everyday?
	jimusho	office
b.	Hai, mainichi jimusho e itte, hataraite imasu.	Yes, he goes to his office and works everyday.
6.	tetsudai	help (stem of the verb tetsudau 'assist, help')
	tetsudai o nasaru	help, assist (exalted equivalent of tetsudai o suru)
a.	Goshujin no tetsudai o nasaru no desu ka.	Do you help your husband?
b.	Hai, tokidoki shujin no tetsudai o shimasu.	Yes, I help my husband sometimes.
c.	Is-shuukan ni nan-nichi gurai tetsudai o nasaimasu ka.	About how many days a week do you help?
d.	Ni-san-nichi mo shimasu.	I help as many as 2 or 3 days.
7.	aru	have, possess (v.i.)

Lesson 29

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	a.	Tanaka-san wa kodomo-san ga arimasu ka.	Does Mr. Tanaka have children?
	b.	Hai, yo-nin arimasu.	Yes, he has four.
	c.	Onna no ko ga futari to otoko no ko ga futari arimasu.	He has two girls and two boys.
		umareru	is born (v.i.)
	d.	Ichi-ban shita no wa itsu goro umaremashita ka.	About when was the youngest one born?
	e.	Jik-kagetsu gurai mae ni umaremashita.	He was born about 10 months ago.
		oki	stem of okimasu 'place' at intervals of ---
		--- oki ni	at intervals of ---
		hitori oki ni	every other person
	f.	Soshite, onna no ko to otoko no ko ga hitori oki ni umaremashita.	And the girls and boys were born alternately.
8.	a.	Choojo no Yukiko-san wa yattsu desu.	Yukiko, the eldest daughter, is eight.
	b.	Jinan no Masao-san wa mada akamboo desu.	Masao, the second son, is still a baby.
9.		soo desu	they say, I hear, I understand (used after a clause)
	a.	Yukiko-san wa yoru yoku neru soo desu.	They say Yukiko sleeps well at night.

Lesson 29

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Keredomo Masao-san wa yoku nenai soo desu.	But Masao doesn't sleep well, I hear.
c.	Tanaka-san no choonan no namae wa Tetsuo da soo desu.	I understand the name of Mr. Tanaka's eldest son is Tetsuo.
	kongetsu	this month
	raigetsu	next month
	saraigetsu	the month after next
	sengetsu	last month
d.	Tetsuo-san wa raigetsu kara gakkoo ni irassharu soo desu.	Tetsuo is going to school from next month, I understand.
	umareta	was born (informal equivalent of umaremashita)
e.	Tetsuo-san wa juuni-gatsu sanjuu ichi-nichi ni umareta soo desu.	I hear Tetsuo was born on December 31.
	hataraita	worked (informal equivalent of hatarakimashita)
f.	Tanaka-san wa kinoo juu-jikan hataraita soo desu.	I hear Mr. Tanaka worked ten hours yesterday.
	shita	did (informal equivalent of shimashita)
g.	Roku-ji goro made shigoto o shita soo desu.	I understand he worked till about 6 o'clock.
	kita	came (informal equivalent of kimashita)
h.	Soshite roku-ji han goro kaette kita soo desu.	And he came back around 6:30, I hear.

Lesson 29

B. Dialogue.

Tanaka Family

1. A: Tanaka-san wa kodomo-san ga iku-nin arimasu ka.

B: Yo-nin arimasu. Onna no ko ga futari to otoko no ko ga futari desu.

2. A: Ichi-ban ue wa musume-san desu ka, musuko-san desu ka.

B: Ichi-ban ue ga musume, ni-bam-me ga musuko, sam-bam-me ga musume, soshite yom-bam-me ga musuko-san desu kara, musume-san to musuko-san ga hitori oki ni umareta no desu.

3. A: Ichi-ban ue no ko wa ikutsu desu ka.

B: Choojo no Hanae-san wa kotoshi yattsu de, kawaii ojoo-san desu.

4. A: Jijo no kata wa ikutsu desu ka.

B: Yottsu de, namae wa Yoshiko-san desu.

5. A: Musuko-san-tachi wa ikutsu desu ka.

B: Choonan no Taroo-san wa muttsu de, jinan no Jiroo-san wa raigetsu ka saraigetsu ni hitotsu ni narimasu. Jiroo-san wa mada akamboo desu.

6. A: Shita no futari wa mada te ga irimasu ne.

B: Ee. Sore de, Tanaka-san no otaku ni wa jochuu-san ga hitori imasu. Ie wa ookii shi, hoka no shigoto mo ooi shi, oku-san ga hitori de wa totemo minna wa dekimasen.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Soo deshoo nee. Oku-san wa hataraite wa irassharanai no deshoo?

   B: Ee. Keredomo tokidoki goshujin no shigoto no tetsudai o nasaru soo desu.

8. A: Sore de wa oku-san wa taihen isogashii desu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Is-shuukan ni ni-san-do goshujin no jimusho ni itte, nani ka shigoto o nasaru soo desu.

9. A: Is-shuukan ni ni-san-nichi mo tetsudai o nasaru no desu ka.

   B: Is-shuukan ni ni-san-do irassharu no desu ga, ichi-nichi-juu tetsudai o nasaru no de wa nai soo desu.

Lesson 29

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: How many children does Mr. Tanaka have?

   B: He has four. Two girls and two boys.

2. A: Is the eldest one a daughter or a son?

   B: The eldest one is a daughter, the second one is a son, the third one is a daughter, and the fourth one is a son. So his daughters and sons were born alternately.

3. A: How old is the eldest child?

   B: Hanae, the eldest daughter, is eight, and she is a cute girl.

4. A: How old is the second daughter?

   B: She is four, and her name is Yoshiko.

5. A: How old are his sons?

   B: Taro, the eldest son, is six, and Jiro, the second son, will be one next month or the month after next. Jiro is a baby yet.

6. A: The two younger ones still require care, don't they?

   B: Yes. So there is a maid at Mr. Tanaka's home. The house is large, and there are many other things to do, and his wife can't possibly do every thing.

7. A: I guess so. I suppose she isn't working, is she?

   B: No. But I understand she helps her husband's work sometimes.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: In that case, she is very busy, isn't she?

   B: That's right. She goes to her husband's office two or three times a week and does some work, they say.

9. A: Does she help as many as two or three days a week?

   B: She goes there two or three days a week, but it isn't that she helps all day, I hear.

Lesson 29

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Number plus mo.

Occurring after numbers, the particle mo means 'as many as' or 'as much as', e.g.,

Kinoo go-mairu mo arukimashita.

'I walked as many as 5 miles yesterday.'

Tanaka-san wa mainichi juu-jikan mo hatarakimasu.

'Mr. Tanaka works as many as 10 hours a day.'

Taroo wa ototoi go-man-en mo tsukaimashita.

'Taro spent as much as 50,000 yen the day before yesterday.'

2. aru with people.

As was described previously, the verb aru is used in reference to the existence of inanimate objects and the verb iru in reference to the existence of animate objects. However, aru also means '(someone) has something or someone'.

Compare:

Kanai wa uchi ni imasu.

'My wife is at home.'

Kanai ga arimasu.

'I have a wife.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kodomo wa soto ni imasu.

'The children are outside.'

Kodomo ga arimasu.

'I have children.'

3. no between nouns in apposition.

A noun in apposition with another noun represents the same person or thing as the other noun. That is, it is another name for the same person or thing. In a combination of two nouns in this relation, the second one is said to be in apposition with the first in English. However, in Japanese the first noun is in apposition with the second and the particle no occurs between the two nouns.

Examples:

Japanese	English
jochuu no Yoshiko	Yoshiko, the maid
choojo no Hanae	Hanae, the eldest daughter
sensei no Tanaka-san	Mr. Tanaka, the teacher

4. Informal past form of verbs.

The meaning of the informal past of verbs is identical with that of -mashita except that it is less formal.

The informal past of any verb is formed by changing the final -e of its TE form to -a.

Lesson 29

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Compare:

Informal non-past		TE-form	Informal past	
kaku	'write'	kaite	kaita	'wrote'
hanasu	'speak'	hanashite	hanashita	'spoke'
tatsu	'stand up'	tatte	tatta	'stood up'
shinu	'die'	shinde	shinda	'died'
narau	'learn'	naratte	naratta	'learned'
yomu	'read'	yonde	yonda	'read'
toru	'take'	totte	totta	'took'
kagu	'smell'	kaide	kaida	'smelled'
tobu	'fly'	tonde	tonda	'flew'
taberu	'eat'	tabete	tabeta	'ate'
miru	'see'	mite	mita	'saw
kuru	'come'	kite	kita	'came'
suru	'do'	shite	shita	'did'
irassharu	'is, come, go'	irasshatte	irasshatta	'was, came, went'
nasaru	'do	nasatte	nasatta	'did'
kudasaru	'give me'	kudasatte	kudasatta	'gave me'

Informal forms occur in informal speech. But even in formal speech, informal forms may occur as non-final inflected forms, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Komban wa go-ji ni yuuhan o taberu n desu.

'I'm going to eat supper at 6 o'clock tonight.'

Chuushoku wa juuni-ji ni tabeta n desu.

'I ate lunch at 12 o'clock.'

Tanaka-san wa ashita kuru deshoo.

'Mr. Tanaka will probably come tomorrow.'

Yamada-san wa kinoo kita deshoo.

'I think Mr. Yamada came yesterday.'

Kodomo-tachi wa ashita iku to omoimasu.

'I think my children will go tomorrow.'

Kanai wa ototoi itta to omoimasu.

'I think my wife went the day before yesterday.'

5. soo desu.

Occurring after the informal non-past or past form of any inflected word, soo desu 'I hear, I understand, they say' means that the statement which precedes it is a hearsay or a secondhand information or something the speaker hasn't actually witnessed himself.

Compare:

Tanaka-san wa sensei desu.

'Mr. Tanaka is a teacher.'

Lesson 29

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tanaka-san wa sensei da soo desu.

'Mr. Tanaka is a teacher, I hear.'

Hanako-san wa taihen kirei desu.

'Hanako is very pretty.'

Hanako-san wa taihen kirei da soo desu.

'Hanako is very pretty, they say.'

Tookyoo no natsu wa mushiatsui desu.

'The summer in Tokyo is sultry.'

Tookyoo no natsu wa mushiatsui soo desu.

'The summer in Tokyo is sultry, I understand.'

Nihon no michi wa semai desu.

'Roads in Japan are narrow.'

Nihon no michi wa semai soo desu.

'They say roads in Japan are narrow.'

Tanaka-san wa ashita Tookyoo e ikimasen.

'Mr. Tanaka is not going to Tokyo tomorrow.'

Tanaka-san wa ashita Tookyoo e ikanai soo desu.

'Mr. Tanaka is not going to Tokyo tomorrow, I hear.'

Buraun-san wa Nihon e ikitai n desu.

'Mr. Brown wants to go to Japan.'

Buraun-san wa Nihon e ikitai soo desu.

'Mr. Brown wants to go to Japan, I understand.'

Sumisu-san wa Nihon e itte imasu.

'Mr. Smith is in Japan.'

Sumisu-san wa Nihon e itte iru soo desu.

'They say Mr. Smith is in Japan.'

Guriin-san wa Nihon ni san-kagetsu imashita.

'Mr. Green was in Japan for three months.'

Guriin-san wa Nihon ni san-kagetsu ita soo desu.

'Mr. Green was in Japan for three months, I understand.'

Guriin-san wa mata Nihon e ikimasu.

'Mr. Green is going to Japan again.'

Guriin-san wa mata Nihon e iku soo desu.

'I hear Mr. Green is going to Japan again.'

6. --- oki ni.

The word oki is the stem of the verb okimasu 'place, put'. Occurring after a number, the phrase oki ni means 'at intervals of, apart'.

Examples:

ichi-nichi oki ni	'every other day, every second day, on alternate days'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

futsu-ka oki ni	'on every third day, two days apart'
nijip-pun oki ni	'twenty minutes apart'
yo-jikan oki ni	'every four hours'

7. totemo.

Occurring in affirmative sentences, totemo means 'very, awfully,' e.g.,

Kyoo wa totemo samui desu.
'It's very cold today.'

Taroo wa totemo yoku benkyoo-shimasu.
'Taro studies very hard.'

However, totemo occurs often in negative potential sentences with the meaning 'can't possibly', e.g.,

Sonna koto wa totemo dekimasen.
'I can't possibly do such a thing.'

Sonna takai jidoosha wa totemo kau koto ga dekimasen.
'I can't possibly buy such an expensive car.'

Lesson 29

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Express the following in Japanese.

   a. Mr. Tanaka works as many as 14 hours a day.

   b. Mr. Yamada reads as many as 10 books a week.

   c. I slept as many as 10 hours last night.

   d. Mr. Suzuki has as many as eight children.

   e. I receive as much as 70,000 yen a month.

2. On the basis of the following table, take turns asking and answering how many children each person has:

	has	
	boys	girls
Mr. Kaneko	3	2
Mr. Sasaki	4	3
Mr. Takeda	5	1
Mr. Suzuki	6	0

3. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences of each pair into a single sentence using a noun in apposition:

   a. (1) Tanaka-san wa sensei desu.

      (2) Tanaka-san wa kodomo-san wa hitori mo arimasen.

   b. (1) Yukiko wa jochuu desu.

      (2) Yukiko wa Eigo ga chitto mo wakarimasen.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

c. (1) Taroo wa choonan desu.
   (2) Taroo wa kokonotsu desu.

d. (1) Kawata-san wa junsa desu.
   (2) Kawata-san wa mainichi Eigo o naratte imasu.

e. (1) Sumisu-san wa Nihongo no seito desu.
   (2) Sumisu-san wa totemo yoku benkyoo-shimasu.

4. Tell your friend that you've heard the following:
   a. Tekawa-san wa kodomo ga arimasen.
   b. Hokkaidoo no fuyu wa totemo samui desu.
   c. Kawata-san wa junsa desu.
   d. Ashita wa ame ga furimasu.
   e. Taroo wa ichi-gatsu tsuitachi ni umaremashita.
   f. Buraun-san wa Nihongo o yoku hanasu koto ga dekimasu.
   g. Sumisu-san wa ni-kagetsu mae ni Nihon e ikimashita.
   h. Hanako-san wa Kawata-san no choojo desu.
   i. Hanako-san wa Amerika de Eigo o naratte imasu.
   j. Jiroo wa nanni mo tabemasen.

5. Tell your friend that:
   a. you go to Tokyo on every third day.
   b. you can't possibly go everyday.
   c. your youngest child needs care.
   d. the maid helps your wife all the time.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. your second daughter is very cute.

Lesson 30

A. Perception Drill.

1.	ryooshin	both parents
	oya	parent, parents
a.	Tanaka-san no ryooshin wa genki desu ka.	Are Mr. Tanaka's parents well?
b.	Hai, dochira mo genki desu.	Yes, both of them are well.
2.	chichi	father
	otoo-san	father (polite equivalent of chichi)
	haha	mother
	okaa-san	mother (polite equivalent of haha)
a.	Tanaka-san no otoo-san wa nani o shite imasu ka.	What's Mr. Tanaka's father doing?
b.	Otoo-san wa hataraite imasu ga, okaa-san wa nanni mo shite imasen.	His father's working, but his mother isn't doing anything.
3.	kyoodai	brother and/or sister
a.	Tanaka-san wa kyoodai ga arimasu ka.	Does Mr. Tanaka have any brother or sister?
	ani	elder brother
	nii-san	elder brother (polite equivalent of ani)
	ane	elder sister
	nee-san	elder sister (polite equivalent of ane)
	otooto	younger brother

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	otooto-san	younger brother (exalted equivalent of *otooto*)
	imooto	younger sister
	imooto-san	younger sister (exalted equivalent of *imooto*)
b.	Hai, otooto-san to imooto-san ga arimasu.	Yes, he has a younger brother and a younger sister.
c.	Nii-san mo nee-san mo nai n desu.	He has neither a big brother nor a big sister.
	-nen	the counter to count years
	ichi-nen	1 year
	gan-nen	the year 1
	ni-nen	2 years *or* the year 2
	san-nen	3 years *or* the year 3
	yo-nen	4 years *or* the year 4
	go-nen	5 years *or* the year 5
	roku-nen	6 years *or* the year 6
	shichi-nen *or* nana-nen	7 years *or* the year 7
	hachi-nen	8 years *or* the year 8
	ku-nen *or* kyuu-nen	9 years *or* the year 9
	juu-nen	10 years *or* the year 10
	nan-nen	how many years? *or* what year?
	hodo	about

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	nakunaru	is lost, disappear, is gone, pass away
d.	Nii-san wa atta n desu ga, nijuu-nen hodo mae ni nakunarimashita.	He had a big brother, but he passed away about 20 years ago.
e.	Nee-san wa nai n desu.	He has no big sister.
4. a.	Otooto-san to imooto-san wa kodomo ga aru n desu ka.	Does his younger brother and sister have children?
	kekkon	marriage
	kekkon-suru	marry (v.i.)
	kekkon-shite iru	is married
	hitorimono or dokushin	single
b.	Otooto-san wa hitorimono desu ga, imooto-san wa musuko-san to musume-san ga hitori-zutsu arimasu.	His younger brother is single, but his younger sister has a son and a daughter.
	ojii-san	grandfather, old man
	obaa-san	grandmother, old woman
c.	Tanaka-san no otoo-san to okaa-san wa imooto-san no kodomo-san no ojii-san to obaa-san desu ne.	Mr. Tanaka's father and mother are the grandfather and the grandmother of his younger sister's children, aren't they?
	oba	aunt
	oba-san	aunt (polite equivalent of oba)

Lesson 30

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	oji	uncle
	oji-san	uncle (polite equivalent of oji)
d.	Tanaka-san wa imooto-san no kodomo-san no oji-san de, imooto-san wa Tanaka-san no kodomo-san no oba-san desu.	Mr. Tanaka is an uncle of his younger sister's children, and his younger sister is an aunt of Mr. Tanaka's children.
	oi	nephew
	mei	niece
e.	Imooto-san no musuko-san to musume-san wa Tanaka-san no oi to mei desu.	His younger sister's son and daughter are Mr. Tanaka's nephew and niece.
	kankei	relationship
f.	Tanaka-san no kodomo-san to imooto-san no kodomo-san no kankei wa nan desu ka.	What's the relationship between Mr. Tanaka's children and his younger sister's children?
	itoko	cousin
g.	Itoko desu.	They are cousins.
	mago	grandchildren
h.	Tanaka-san no ryooshin wa mago ga nan-nin arimasu ka.	How many grandchildren do Mr. Tanaka's parents have?
i.	Roku-nin arimasu.	They have six.
5.	sunde	TE form of sumu 'dwell, reside, live' (v.i.)

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	a.	Tanaka-san no ryooshin wa doko ni sunde imasu ka.	Where do Mr. Tanaka's parents live?
		inaka	rural area, the country
	b.	Inaka ni sunde imasu.	They live in the country.
6.		kawaii	cute, dear
		kawaikatta	was cute (informal equivalent of kawaii deshita)
	a.	Tanaka-san no imooto-san wa kawaikatta n desu ka.	Was Mr. Tanaka's younger sister cute?
		nai	informal equivalent of arimasen
		nakatta	informal equivalent of arimasen deshita
	b.	Ammari kawaiku wa nakatta soo desu.	I understand he wasn't very cute.
		datta	informal equivalent of deshita
	c.	Tanaka-san no nii-san ga choonan datta n desu ne.	Mr. Tanaka's elder brother was the eldest son, wasn't he?
7.	a.	Tanaka-san no okusan no oya wa doko ni sunde imasu ka.	Where does Mrs. Tanaka's parents live?
		iru	is, stay (v.i.)
		itai	want to stay

Lesson 30

A. Perception Drill, continued.

itakatta	informal equivalent of itai deshita
kotoshi or konnen	this year
kyonen	last year
ototoshi	the year before last
rainen	next year
sarainen	the year after next
utsuru	move (v.i.)
b. Tookyoo ni itakatta n desu ga, kyonen Yokohama ni utsutta soo desu.	They wanted to stay in Tokyo, but they moved to Yokohama last year, I hear.
utsuranai	informal equivalent of utsurimasen
utsuranakatta	informal equivalent of utsurimasen deshita
c. Tanaka-san wa utsuranakatta soo desu.	Mr. Tanaka didn't move, I hear.

Lesson 30

B. Dialogue.

Tanaka Family, Continued.

1. A: Tanaka-san no ryooshin wa genki desu ka.
   B: Ee, otoo-san mo okaa-san mo genki desu.

2. A: Doko ni sunde imasu ka.
   B: Futari de inaka ni sunde imasu ga, tokidoki mago no kao o mi ni kuru soo desu.

3. A: Ojii-san ni mo obaa-san ni mo mago ga kawaii no deshoo.
   B: Soo deshoo.

4. A: Mago wa Tanaka-san no kodomo-tachi dake desu ka.
   B: Iie, Tanaka-san no imooto no Midori-san ni mo kodomo ga futari arimasu kara, minna de roku-nin imasu.

5. A: Midori-san no kodomo wa dochira mo otoko no ko desu ka.
   B: Iie, hitori wa otoko no ko de, moo hitori wa onna no ko desu.

6. A: Tanaka-san wa futari kyoodai desu ka.
   B: Iie, otooto mo hitori arimasu. Otooto-san wa mada hitorimono desu.

7. A: Nii-san mo nee-san mo nai n desu ka.
   B: Nii-san wa atta n desu ga, nijuu-nen hodo mae ni nakunatta soo desu. Nee-san wa nai n desu.

Lesson 30

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Tanaka-san no nii-san ga choonan datta n desu ka. Chitto mo shirimasen deshita.

B: Soo deshoo. Furui koto desu kara nee.

9. A: Midori-san no musuko-san to musume-san wa Tanaka-san no oi to mei desu ne.

B: Ee, soo desu.

10. A: Tanaka-san no kodomo-san-tachi to Midori-san no kodomo-san-tachi no kankei wa nan desu ka.

B: Itoko desu.

11. A: Midori-san wa Tanaka-san no kodomo-san-tachi no nan desu ka.

B: Oba-san desu. Soshite Tanaka-san wa Midori-san no kodomo-san-tachi no oji-san desu.

12. A: Tanaka-san no okusan no oya wa doko ni imasu ka.

B: Yokohama ni sunde iru soo desu. Tookyoo ni itakatta soo desu ga, ii shigoto ga atte, kyonen Yokohama ni utsutta soo desu.

Lesson 30

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Are Mr. Tanaka's parents well?

   B: Yes, both his father and mother are well.

2. A: Where are they living?

   B: They are living in the country by themselves, but I hear they come to see their grandchildren sometimes.

3. A: I think the grandchildren are dear to both the grandfather and the grandmother.

   B: I guess so.

4. A: Are Mr. Tanaka's children the only grandchildren they have?

   B: No, Midori, Mr. Tanaka's younger sister, has two children, so they have six altogether.

5. A: Are Midori's children both boys?

   B: No, one is a boy and the other is a girl.

6. A: Is Mr. Tanaka one of the two children?

   B: No, he has one younger brother. His younger brother is still single.

7. A: He doesn't have elder brothers and sisters?

   B: He had an elder brother, but he passed away about twenty years ago, I understand. He doesn't have any elder sister.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: (So) Mr. Tanaka's elder brother was the eldest son! I didn't know it at all.

   B: I suppose so. Because it's the thing which happened a long time ago.

9. A: Midori's son and daughter are Mr. Tanaka's nephew and niece, aren't they?

   B: Yes, they are.

10. A: What's the relationship between Mr. Tanaka's children and Midori's children?

    B: They are cousins.

11. A: What is Midori to Mr. Tanaka's children?

    B: She is an aunt. And Mr. Tanaka is an uncle of Midori's children.

12. A: Where are Mrs. Tanaka's parents?

    B: I understand they live in Yokohama. I hear they wanted to stay in Tokyo, but having found a good job they moved to Yokohama last year.

Lesson 30

D. Grammar Notes.

1. -nen 'year'.

-Nen is the counter to count the number of years. It is also combined with the Chinese series of numerals.

ichi-nen	'1 year'
gan-nen	'the year 1'
ni-nen	'2 years' or 'the year 2'
san-nen	'3 years' or 'the year 3'
yo-nen	'4 years' or 'the year 4'
go-nen	'5 years' or 'the year 5'
roku-nen	'6 years' or 'the year 6'
shichi-nen or nana-nen	'7 years' or 'the year 7'
hachi-nen	'8 years' or 'the year 8'
ku-nen or kyuu-nen	'9 years' or 'the year 9'
juu-nen	'10 years' or 'the year 10'
nan-nen	'how many years?' or 'what year?'
ni-nen han	'2½ years'

Examples:

Nihon ni nan-nen imashita ka.

'How many years were you in Japan?'

San-nen imashita.

'I was there 3 years.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tanabe-san wa nan-nen mae ni nakunarimashita ka.

'How many years ago did Mr. Tanabe pass away?'

Gon-nen mae ni nakunarimashita.

'He passed away 5 years ago.'

Itsu Nihon kara kaerimashita ka.

'When did you come back from Japan?'

Sen kyuuhyaku rokujuu ninen ni kaerimashita.

'I came back in 1962.'

Dewa Shoowa sanjuu shichi-nen deshita ne.

'Then, it was Showa 37, wasn't it?'

Notes:	Meiji	'the Meiji Era (1868-1912)'
	Taishoo	'the Taisho Era (1912-1926)'
	Shoowa	'the Shoowa Era (1926-)'

2. hodo 'about'.

Occurring after the numbers or expressions of quantity, hodo means 'about', e.g.,

Tanaka-san no nii-san wa nijuu-nen hodo mae ni nakunarimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka's elder brother passed away about 20 years ago.'

Thus, *hodo* and *gurai* have the same meaning. However, *gurai* occurs in affirmative sentences and *hodo* may occur either affirmative or negative sentences.

Compare:

> Koko kara Tookyoo made jidoosha de nan-jikan *gurai* kakarimasu ka.
>
> or
>
> Koko kara Tookyoo made jidoosha de nan-jikan *hodo* kakarimasu ka.
>
> 'About how many hours does it take from here to Tokyo by car?'
>
> Ni-jikan *gurai* kakaru deshoo.
>
> or
>
> Ni-jikan *hodo* kakaru deshoo.
>
> 'I think it takes about 2 hours.'
>
> Ni-jikan *hodo* shika kakarimasen ka.
>
> 'Does it take only about 2 hours?'

3. Informal past of I-adjectives including *nai*, *-nai*, *-tai*.

The informal past of I-adjectives including *nai*, *-nai*, and *-tai* is made by dropping the final *-i* of the non-past or basic form and adding *-katta*.

Compare:

> Kinoo wa *samui* deshita.
>
> Kinoo wa *samukatta* desu.
>
> 'It was cold yesterday.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kodomo wa arimasen deshita.

Kodomo wa nakatta n desu.

'He didn't have children.'

Kyooto e ikimasen deshita.

Kyooto e ikanakatta n desu.

'I didn't go to Kyoto.'

Kyooto e ikitai n deshita ga iku koto ga dekimasen deshita.

Kyooto e ikitakatta n desu ga, iku koto ga dekinakatta n desu.

'I wanted to go to Kyoto, but couldn't go.'

Oosaka e wa ikitaku wa arimasen deshita.

Oosaka e wa ikitaku wa nakatta n desu.

'I didn't want to go to Osaka.'

4. Informal equivalent of deshita.

The informal equivalent of the copula deshita is datta.

Compare:

Taroo wa sensei deshita.

Taroo wa sensei datta n desu.

'Taro was a teacher.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Jiroo wa gunjin deshita.

'Jiro was a soldier.'

Jiroo wa gunjin datta soo desu.

'I understand Jiro was a soldier.'

Kinoo wa yasumi deshita kara, hatarakimasen deshita.

Kinoo wa yasumi datta kara, hatarakanakatta n desu.

'Yesterday was a day off, so I didn't work.'

Tanaka-san wa tai-i deshita.

'Mr. Tanaka was a captain.'

Tanaka-san wa tai-i datta to omoimasu.

'I think Mr. Tanaka was a captain.'

5. ka (!).

The particle ka may occur at the end of a statement with a low pitch to indicate the speaker's surprise.

Examples:

Tanaka-san no nii-san ga choonan datta n desu ka.

'(So) Mr. Tanaka's elder brother was the eldest son!'

Otooto-san wa mada kekkon-shite inai n desu ka.

'(So) his younger brother is not married yet!'

Lesson 30

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. On the basis of the following table, take turns asking and answering questions as to when or how long each person did so-and-so:

	came to America	studied English	went back to Japan
Tanaka	in 1956	about 2 years	in 1958
Yamada	in about 1949	3 years	in 1952
Kawata	in 1954	about 1 year	in 1955
Saito	in 1960	1½ years	in 1962

2. Change each of the following formal non-past sentences to the corresponding informal past sentence:

   a. Tanaka-san wa kyoodai ga arimasen.

   b. Ano kata no mago wa gakkoo ni itte imasen.

   c. Okane ga arimasen kara, nanni mo kau koto ga dekimasen.

   d. Muhandoohoo no shageki no shi-kata wa naraimasen.

   e. Jirai no hori-kata ga naraitai desu.

   f. Kenjuu no tsukai-kata o shirimasen.

   g. Sono jidoosha wa atarashiku wa arimasen.

   h. Hayaku kekkon-shitai desu.

   i. Ano ko wa totemo warui desu.

   j. Ano eiga wa taihen ii desu.

   k. Ano sensei wa totemo ii hito desu.

   1. Hanako wa taihen kirei desu.

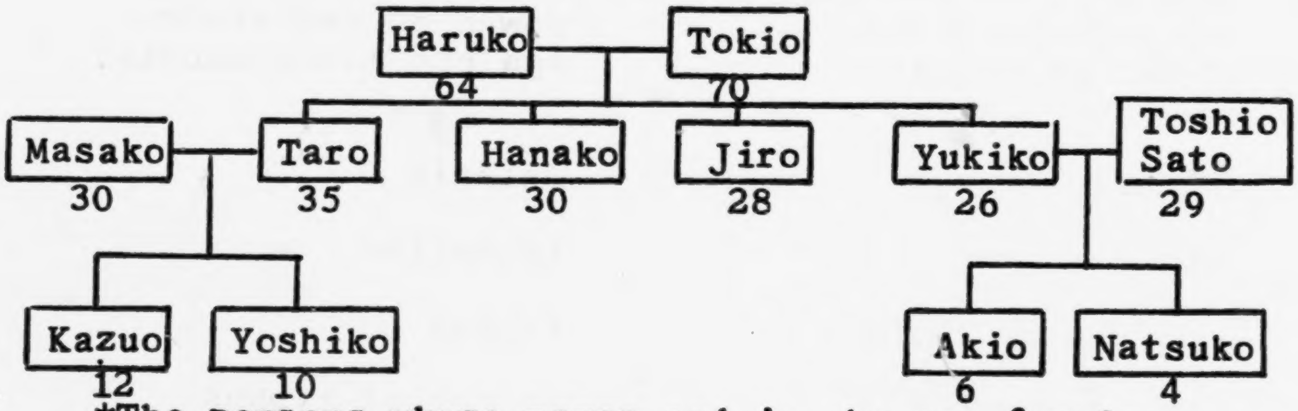
E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

m. Jiroo wa byooki desu.

3. Tell your friend that you've heard that:
   - a. Mr. Kato's elder sister passed away.
   - b. a baby was born to Mr. Kawata's younger sister.
   - c. Mr. Kuroda's father had been sick for 2 years.
   - d. Mr. Ito was still single.
   - e. Mr. Tanaka was a soldier for 3 years.
   - f. Tanaka's parents wanted to come to see their grandchildren.
   - g. but they couldn't come.
   - h. Mr. Tanaka was one of the four children.
   - i. Masao didn't have any cousins.
   - j. Mr. Sasaki's niece was very cute.

4. On the basis of the following family tree, take turns asking and answering questions regarding the relationship between the members of the family:

Yamamoto Family*


Haruko
64
Tokio
70
Masako
30
Taro
35
Hanako
30
Jiro
28
Yukiko
26
Toshio Sato
29
Kazuo
12
Yoshiko
10
Akio
6
Natsuko
4

*The persons whose names end in -ko are female.

5. Take turns asking and answering questions about certain families.

Lesson 31

A. Perception Drill.

1.		hai	lung
		kekkaku	tuberculosis
		hai-kekkaku	pulmonary tuberculosis
	a.	Hai-kekkaku wa donna byooki desu ka.	What sort of disease is pulmonary tuberculosis?
		mune	chest
	b.	Mune no byooki desu.	It's a chest disease.
		densen	contagion
		densem-byoo	contageous disease (communicable disease)
	c.	Hai-kekkaku wa densem-byoo desu.	Pulmonary tuberculosis is a communicable disease.
		... ni taisuru or ni taishite	against
		teikoo	resistance
		teikoo-ryoku	power of resistance
	d.	Aru hito wa kekkaku ni taisuru teikoo-ryoku ga arimasen.	Some people have no power of resistance against tuberculosis.
2.		marariya	malaria
		choo	intestine
		chifusu or chibusu	typhus
		choo-chibusu	abdominal typhus (or typhoid fever)
	a.	Marariya mo choo-chibusu mo warui byooki desu.	Malaria and abdominal typhus are bad diseases.

Lesson 31

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	i	stomach
	kaiyoo	ulcer
	i-kaiyoo	stomach ulcer
	choo-kaiyoo	intestinal ulcer
b.	I ya choo no kaiyoo mo warui byooki desu.	Stomach and intestinal ulcers are also bad.
	shinzoo	heart
	shinzoo-byoo	heart disease
	gan	cancer
c.	Shinzoo no byooki ya gan wa densem-byoo yori warui desu.	Heart diseases and cancers are worse than communicable diseases.
3.	hifu	skin
	hifu-byoo	skin disease
a.	Nihon ni wa hifu-byoo ga ooi desu.	Skin diseases are common in Japan.
b.	Hifu-byoo no, ii kusuri ga arimasu.	There are good medicines for skin diseases.
4.	kaze	a cold *or* wind
	kaze o hiku	catch a cold
a.	Kaze o hiku to doo narimasu ka.	What will happen if you catch a cold?
	netsu	fever, heat, temperature

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	b.	Netsu ga demasu.	I'll have a fever.
5.		eisei	sanitation, hygiene
	a.	Kitanai daidokoro wa eisei ni warui desu.	Dirty kitchens are unsanitary.
		kakaru	is afflicted, is seized (v.i.)
		byooki ni kakaru	is taken ill, fall ill, is afflicted with an illness
		naoru	is cured, get well, is healed; is repaired, is mended (v.i.)
	b.	Warui byooki ni kakaru to nakanaka naorimasen.	If you are afflicted with a bad disease, you won't get well easily.
6.		isha	medical doctor
	a.	Byooki ni naru to isha ni ikimasu.	Whenever I get sick, I go to a doctor.
	b.	Isha wa taihen taisetsu na hito desu.	Doctors are very important persons.
7.		shinu	die, pass away (v.i.)
	a.	Tanabe-san wa donna byooki de shinimashita ka.	What sort of sickness did Mr. Tanabe die from?
	b.	Gan de shinimashita.	He died from cancer.
8.	a.	Kono-goro wa ii kusuri ga takusan arimasu ne.	There are many good medicines nowadays, aren't there?

Lesson 31

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	penishirin	penicillin
	yoo	appearance, manner (copula noun)
	-- yoo na	like --
b.	Penishirin no yoo na ii kusuri ga takusan arimasu.	There are many good medicines like penicillin.
	-- yoo desu	appear, seem, look like
c.	Kazuo wa byooki no yoo desu.	Kazuo seems to be sick.
	furo	bath
	furo ni hairu	take a bath
d.	Kazuo wa komban furo ni hairimasu ka.	Is Kazuo going to take a bath tonight?
e.	Iie, byooki no yoo na node, hairimasen.	No, he's not going to take it because he feels sick.
9.	noni	in spite of, despite, though (particle)
a.	Hanako wa kaze o hiite iru noni, furo ni hairitai to iimasu.	Hanako says she wants to take a bath though she has a cold.
	kara	after (when used after the TE form of verbs)
b.	Ja, yuuhan o tabete kara, ohairinasai.	Then, take it after you eat supper.

Lesson 31

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		yoku	often, frequently
	c.	Hanako wa yoku furo ni hairimasu ne.	Hanako takes a bath often, doesn't she?
9.		ukagau	inquire, ask (humble verb, v.t.)
	a.	Hanako-san ni tsuite ukagaitai n desu ga.	I want to inquire about Hanako, but --.
		tazuneru	inquire, ask (v.t.)
	b.	Nan demo otazune kudasai.	Please ask me anything.
	c.	Hanako-san wa kaze o hiite iru to kikimashita ga, ikaga desu ka.	I heard that Miss Hanako has a cold, but how is she?
		yoku naru	get well, recover, improve
	d.	Sugu yoku naru deshoo.	I think she will get well soon.
		aida	space of time or distance, interval
		sono aida	in the meantime, during that period
	e.	Ima furo ni haitte imasu kara, sono aida, hanashimashoo.	She is taking a bath now, so let's talk in the meantime.
		sono ue or sore ni	besides, in addition
	f.	Sore ni, watakushi mo choodo hima desu kara.	Besides, I'm free just now, so --- .

Lesson 31

B. Dialogue.

Illness.

1. A: Komban wa byooki ni tsuite sukoshi ukagaitai to omoimasu.

   B: Soo desu ka. Nan demo otazune kudasai. Keredomo watakushi wa isha de wa arimasen kara, yoku shirimasen yo.

2. A: Nihon ni wa mune no byooki ga ooi soo desu ga.

   B: Hai-kekkaku desu ne. Ooi desu. Nihon-jin wa kekkaku ni taisuru teikoo-ryoku ga sukunai node, yoku shinimasu.

3. A: Nihon-jin wa kekkaku ni taisuru teikoo-ryoku ga sonna ni sukunai desu ka.

   B: Soo desu. Sono ue, hajime no aida wa netsu mo amari nai shi, byooki ni kakatte iru to omowanai no desu. Sore ga warui no desu. Aru hito wa kaze o hiite iru to omotte iru no desu.

4. A: Soo desu ka. Marariya ya choo-chibusu wa doo desu ka.

   B: Marariya wa Nihon ni wa arimasen. Choo-chibusu mo ima de wa hontondo arimasen. Eisei ga yoku natte kara, sonna byooki wa naku narimashita.

5. A: Sore ni penishirin no yoo na ii kusuri ga arimasu kara, hayaku naorimasu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Sore desu kara, densem-byoo yori wa shinzoo no byooki, i ya choo no kaiyoo, gan nado ga warui desu.

6. A: Nihon ni wa hifu no byooki ga ooi to kikimashita ga.

   B: Hifu-byoo wa taihen ooi desu. Nihon-jin wa furo ni yoku hairu noni hifu no byooki ga ooi desu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Nihon ni wa hifu-byoo no ii kusuri ga takusan aru to kikimashita ga, sore wa hifu-byoo ga ooi kara deshoo ka.

   B: Soo desu. Kono-goro wa atarashii ii kusuri ga takusan aru soo desu.

8. A: Penishirin mo ima Nihon de tsukutte imasu ka.

   B: Hai, sen kyuuhyaku yonjuu hachi-nen goro kara tsukutte imasu.

9. A: Komban wa doo mo iroiro to arigatoo gozaimashita.

   B: Doo itashimashite. Mata hanashi ni kite kudasai.

10. A: Arigatoo gozaimasu. Dewa, oyasuminasai.

    B: Oyasuminasai.

Lesson 31

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: I'd like to ask you a little about diseases tonight.

   B: Is that so? Please ask me anything. But I'm not a doctor, so I don't know very much, you know.

2. A: I understand there are many chest troubles in Japan, but -- .

   B: You mean pulmonary tuberculosis, don't you? There are many cases of that. The Japanese die from it often because they have little power of resistance against tuberculosis.

3. A: Do the Japanese have such little resistance against tuberculosis as that?

   B: That's right. Besides, not having very much fever during the early period, they don't think they are afflicted with the disease. That's bad. Some people think they suffer from colds.

4. A: Is that so? How about malaria and abdominal typhus (or typhoid fever)?

   B: There is no malaria in Japan. Typhoid fever, too, is almost extinct now. Since the sanitation improved, such diseases as that have disappeared.

5. A: Besides, there are good medicines like penicillin, so they get well quickly, don't they?

   B: That's right. So such diseases as heart diseases, stomach and intestinal ulcers, and cancers are worse than communicable diseases.

6. A: I've heard that there are many skin diseases in Japan, but --- .

   B: Skin diseases are very common. In spite of the fact that the Japanese take a bath often, there are many skin diseases.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

7. A: I've heard that there are many good medicines for skin diseases in Japan, but I wonder if it's because there are many skin diseases?

   B: That's right. I hear there are many good new medicines.

8. A: Do they make penicillin in Japan now?

   B: Yes, they've been making it since about 1948.

9. A: Thank you very much for everything this evening.

   B: Not at all. Please come again (to talk to me).

10. A: Thank you. Well, good night.

    B: Good night.

Lesson 31

D. Grammar Notes.

1. *yoo* 'like'.

Yoo is a copula noun meaning 'appearance, manner, way'. It is always preceded by some modifier and followed by some form of copula *desu*, *na* or *ni*.

Examples:

Tanaka-san wa *isha no* *yoo* *desu*.

'Mr. Tanaka appears to be a doctor.'

or

'Mr. Tanaka looks like a doctor.'

Hanako-san wa *byooki no* *yoo* *desu*.

'Miss Hanako appears to be sick.'

Penishirin no *yoo* *na* ii kusuri ga takusan arimasu.

'There are many good medicines like penicillin.'

Kyoo *anata no* *yoo* *na* hito o mimashita.

'I saw a man like you today.'

Jiroo wa *otona no* *yoo* *ni* takusan tabemasu.

'Jirō eats a lot like an adult.'

Buraun-san wa *Nihon-jin no* *yoo* *ni* Nihongo o yoku hanashimasu.

'Mr. Brown speaks Japanese well like a Japanese.'

2. *noni* 'in spite of, though'.

The basic form of a verb plus *no* *ni* was introduced previously with the meaning 'for the purpose of doing so-

and-so', e.g.,

> Aru hito wa tegami o kaku no ni, jibiki o tsukaimasu.
>
> 'Some people use dictionaries to write letters.'

Noni introduced for the first time in this lesson is a particle and its meaning is different from that of no ni. The particle noni means 'in spite of, despite, though', and it occurs after the non-past or past form of verbs, I-adjectives and the copula. This is similar to the meaning and occurrence of the particles ga and keredomo 'but, though' in that they all occur between two contrasting statements. However, there is a slight difference of meaning. Noni 'in spite of, though' suggests more active opposition or more strongly adverse consideration to be encountered.

Compare:

> Ano ko wa yoku tabemasu ga, ookiku, narimasen.
>
> 'That child eats well, but he doesn't grow.'
>
> Ano ko wa yoku taberu noni, ookiku narimasen.
>
> 'Though that child eats well, he doesn't grow.'
>
> Nihon-jin wa yoku furo ni hairimasu ga, hifubyoo ga ooi desu.
>
> 'The Japanese often take a bath, but skin diseases are common.'

Lesson 31

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nihon-jin wa yoku furo ni hairu noni, hifubyoo ga ooi desu.

'In spite of the fact that the Japanese often take a bath, skin diseases are common.'

Ame ga futte ita ga, sampo ni ikimashita.

'It was raining, but he went for a walk.'

Ame ga futte ita noni, sampo ni ikimashita.

'He went for a walk in spite of the fact it was raining.'

Taihen samui ga, soto de hataraite imasu.

'It's very cold, but he is working outside.'

Taihen samui noni, soto de hataraite imasu.

'In spite of the fact that it's very cold, he is working outside.'

Taihen atsukatta ga, mado o shimete nemashita.

'It was very hot, but I slept with the windows closed.'

Taihen atsukatta noni, made o shimete nemashita.

'I slept with the windows closed in spite of the fact it was very hot.'

Nihon-jin desu ga, Nihongo o shirimasen.

'He is a Japanese, but he doesn't know Japanese.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nihon-jin da* noni, Nihongo o shirimasen.

or

Nihon-jin na* noni, Nihongo o shirimasen.

'In spite of the fact that he is a Japanese, he doesn't know Japanese.'

*Note that before noni the copula da or na may occur.

3. TE form of verbs plus kara 'after'.

As was introduced previously, the particle kara occurs after a noun with the meaning 'from' and after a statement with the meaning 'because', e.g.,

Tanaka-san wa Nihon kara kimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka came from Japan.'

Okane ga nakatta kara nanni mo kau koto ga dekinakatta n desu.

'I couldn't buy anything because I didn't have any money.'

However, occurring after the TE form of verbs, the particle kara means 'after doing so-and-so', e.g.,

Chuushoku o totte kara, ikimasu.

'I'll go after having lunch.'

Suzushiku natte kara, uchi ni kaerimasu.

'I'll go home after it gets cool.'

Lesson 31

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Uchi ni kaette kara, benkyoo-shimasu.

'I'll study after going home.'

4. yoku 'well, skilfully, often, hard, a lot'.

Yoku is the -ku form of the adjective yoi 'good, nice', and it occurs as an adverb with different meanings, e.g.,

Yoru yoku nemasu.

'I sleep well at night.'

Ano kata wa Nihongo ga yoku dekimasu.

'He speaks Japanese fluently.'

Ano seito wa yoku benkyoo-shimasu.

'That student studies hard.'

Sumisu-san wa yoku Nihon e ikimasu.

'Mr. Smith goes to Japan often.'

Ame ga yoku furimasu.

'It rains a lot.'

or

'It rains frequently.'

Thus, the exact meaning of yoku depends on the context.

In conversational speech, Yoku irasshaimasu means 'He comes often.' But Yoku irasshaimashita means 'I'm glad you came.' And yoku naru means 'get well, get better, improve.'

Lesson 31

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Tell your friend that:

   a. he looks like a Japanese.

   b. he talks like a Japanese.

   c. you bought a medicine like aspirin.

   d. you became afflicted with a disease like cancer.

   e. Pulmonary tuberculosis during the early stage is like a cold.

   f. you saw a man like him.

   g. he knows well about medicines like a doctor.

   h. you speak Japanese well like him.

   i. you sleep well like a child.

2. Given below are pairs of sentences. Using noni and making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences of each pair into a complete sentence:

   a. (1) Nihon ni san-nen mo imashita.

      (2) Nihongo ga wakarimasen.

   b. (1) Ame ga takusan futte imasu.

      (2) Gorufu ni ikitai to iimasu.

   c. (1) Okane ga arimasen.

      (2) Atarashii jidoosha ga kaitai to iimasu.

   d. (1) Taihen samui desu.

      (2) Mado o akete nemasu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. (1) Moo juu-ji desu.
(2) Mada nete imasu.

f. (1) Ano kata wa sensei desu.
(2) Nanni mo shirimasen.

g. (1) Jip-pun mae ni takusan tabemashita.
(2) Mata tabete imasu.

h. (1) Doko e mo ikimasen deshita.
(2) Doko ka e itta to iimashita.

i. (1) Shinzoo-byoo ni kakatte imasu.
(2) Mainichi yoku hatarakimasu.

j. (1) Netsu ga takakatta n desu.
(2) Isha ni ikimasen deshita.

3. Express the following in Japanese:
   a. In spite of the fact that it's May, it's snowing.
   b. He is working hard in spite of the fact he has bad legs.
   c. He's still up in spite of the fact it's already 12 o'clock.

4. Given below are pairs of sentences. Combine the two sentences of each pair into a complete sentence, using the particle kara and making whatever changes are necessary:

Lesson 31

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

a. (1) Yuuhan o tabemasu.

(2) Shimbun o yomimasu.

b. (1) Moo takusan tabemashita.

(2) Nanni mo tabetaku wa arimasen.

c. (1) Kaze o hiite imasu.

(2) Uchi de yasunde imasu.

d. (1) Nihon-jin wa kekkaku ni taishite teikoo-ryoku ga arimasen.

(2) Yoku shinimasu.

e. (1) Densem-byoo ni kakarimashita.

(2) Doko e mo iku koto ga dekimasen.

5. Express the following in Japanese.

a. He caught a cold.

b. He contracted tuberculosis.

c. He has cancer.

d. He died last week.

e. This is dead.

f. He takes a bath once a week.

g. He has no power of resistance against cold.

h. He recovered from a stomach ulcer.

i. I'm glad that you came.

j. Taking a walk by the beach is good for the health.

Lesson 32

A. Perception Drill.

1.	kookuu	aviation
	kookuu-tai	aviation unit
	rikugun kookuu-tai	army aviation unit
	nimmu	mission
a.	Rikugun kookuu-tai no nimmu wa nan desu ka.	What is the mission of an army aviation unit?
	omo ni	chiefly, mainly
	jin-in	personnel
	shizai	materiel
	yusoo	transportation
	yusoo-suru	transport (v.t.)
	yusoo-suru koto desu	is to transport
b.	Omo ni jin-in shizai o yusoo-suru koto desu.	Mainly it is to transport personnel and materiel.
c.	Sono hoka, donna koto o shimasu ka.	Other than that, what sorts of things does it do?
	renraku	liaison
	renraku-suru	is in touch with, connect, intercommunicate (v.t.)
	teisatsu	reconnaissance
	teisatsu-suru	reconnoiter (v.t.)
	kansoku	observation
	kansoku-suru	observe (v.t.)

Lesson 32

A. Perception Drill, continued.

d.	Renraku, teisatsu, kansoku nado mo shimasu.	It also conducts liaison, reconnaissance, observation, and so on.
2.	kookuu-ki	aircraft
a.	Rikugun kookuu-tai wa donna kookuu-ki o tsukaimasu ka.	What sorts of aircraft does it use?
	yusoo-ki	transport plane
	kogata-ki	small plane
	herikoputaa	helicopter
b.	Yusoo-ki, kogata-ki, herikoputaa nado o tsukai masu.	It uses transport planes, small planes, helicopters and the like.
	sentoo	fighting, combat, action
	sentoo-suru	fight (v.i.)
	sentoo-ki	fighter
	bakugeki	bombing
	bakugeki-suru	bomb (v.t.)
	bakugeki-ki	bomber
c.	Sentoo-ki ya bakugeki-ki wa tsukawanai n desu ka.	Doesn't it use fighters, bombers, and the like?
	soobi	equipment
	soobi-suru	equip (v.t.)
d.	Soo desu. Keredomo aru herikoputaa ni wa kikanjuu o soobi-shite imasu.	That's right. But some helicopters are equipped with machine guns.

Lesson 32

A. Perception Drill, continued.

3.		soojuu-shi	pilot
	a.	Rikugun kookuu-tai no soojuu-shi wa kuugun no hito desu ka.	Are pilots of army aviation units Air Force personnel?
	b.	Iie, rikugun no gunjin desu.	No, they are Army personnel.
4.	a.	Rikugun kookuu-tai wa nani o teisatsu-suru n desu ka.	What does an army aviation unit reconnoiter?
		tekigun	enemy troops
		ichi	position
		hakken	discovery
		hakken-suru	discover (v.t.)
	b.	Tekigun no ichi ya soobi o hakken-shimasu.	It discovers the enemy positions and equipment.
5.	a.	Nani o kansoku-shimasu ka.	What does it observe?
		danchaku	impact (the striking of a projectile or bomb on the target or surface)
		seikaku	accurate (copula noun)
		--- ka doo ka	whether --- or not
	b.	Hoohei no danchaku ga seikaku ka doo ka o kansoku-shimasu.	It observes whether the impact of artillery is accurate or not.
	c.	Sore dake desu ka.	Is that all?

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	chi-iki	area, district
	-nai	within
	chi-iki-nai	within an area
	idoo	movement
	idoo-suru	move (v.t.)
	koodoo	maneuver, action, activity
	koodoo-suru	maneuver, act (v.i.)
	kanshi	watch, lookout, surveillance
	kanshi-suru	watch, is on the lookout for, observe (v.t.)
d.	Aru chi-iki-nai de no teki no idoo ya hoka no koodoo o kanshi-shimasu.	It watches the enemy movements and other maneuvers within a certain area.
7.	fushoo	wound
	fushoo-suru	is wounded, sustain injuries (v.t.)
	fushoo-sha	the wounded
	koosoo	evacuation
	koosoo-suru	evacuate (v.t.)
a.	Fushoo-sha no koosoo wa dare ga shimasu ka.	Who evacuates the wounded?
	rikujoo	land, ground
	rikujoo-butai	ground unit

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	b.	Rikujoo-butai ga shimasu ga kookuu-tai mo tetsudaimasu.	Ground units do, but aviation units also assist.
8.		sorewa-sooto	by the way
		--- koto ni natte imasu	it's been decided or arranged that ---
	a.	Sorewa-sooto watakushi wa ashita rikugun kookuu-tai o mi ni iku koto ni natte imasu.	By the way, (it's been arranged that) I am to go to see an army aviation unit tomorrow.
	b.	Soo desu ka. Watakushi mo issho ni ikitai n desu ga, ashita wa butai o tenken-suru koto ni natte imasu node, iku koto ga dekimasen.	Is that so? I want to go with you. But I can't because (it's been arranged that) I am to inspect a unit tomorrow.
	c.	Tanaka-tai-i wa.	How about Captain Tanaka?
		--- koto ni suru	decide to do so-and-so
	d.	Tanaka-san wa ashita wa gorufu o yaru koto ni shita soo desu.	I understand Mr. Tanaka has decided to play golf tomorrow.

Lesson 32

B. Dialogue.

Army Aviation.

1. A: Ashita wa rikugun-kookuu-tai o mi ni iku koto ni natte imasu. Sorede, kyoo wa sore ni tsuite, sukoshi oukagai-shitai to omotte, tazunete kimashita.

   B: Soo desu ka. Yoku irasshaimashita. Doozo okake kudasai.

2. A: Rikugun-kookuu-tai no nimmu ni tsuite hanashite kudasai.

   B: Sono nimmu wa jin-in shizai no yusoo, renraku, teisatsu, kansoku nado desu.

3. A: Sore ni wa donna kookuu-ki o tsukaimasu ka.

   B: Kanari ookii yusoo-ki ya, kogata-ki ya herikoputaa nado o tsukaimasu.

4. A: Soojuu-shi nado wa kuugun no hito desu ka.

   B: Iie, jin-in wa minna rikugun no gunjin desu.

5. A: Sentoo-ki ya bakugeki-ki mo tsukaimasu ka.

   B: Iie, tsukaimasen. Keredomo konogoro wa herikoputaa ni kikanjuu ya muhandoohoo o soobi-shite imasu kara, sukoshi wa sentoo dekimasu.

6. A: Rikugun de wa hikooki o teisatsu ni tsukau to kikimashita ga, donna teisatsu desu ka.

   B: Omo ni tekigun no ichi ya soobi nado o hakken-suru koto desu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Soredewa, kansoku to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

B: Sore wa hoohei no danchaku ga seikaku ka doo ka o kansoku-shitari, aru chi-iki-nai de no teki no idoo ya hoka no koodoo o kanshi-shitari suru koto desu.

8. A: Sorewa-sooto, fushoo-sha no koosoo wa dare ga suru koto ni natte imasu ka.

B: Rikujoo-butai ga shimasu ga, kookuu-tai mo herikoputaa nado o tsukatte tetsudaimasu.

9. A: Kyoo wa doo mo arigatoo gozaimashita.

B: Doo itashimashite. Mata oide kudasai.

10. A: Sayoonara.

B: Sayoonara.

Lesson 32

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: (It's been arranged that) I am to go to see an army aviation unit tomorrow. So I came to visit you today hoping to ask you a little about it.

   B: Is that so? I'm glad you came. Please sit down.

2. A: Please tell me about the mission of an army aviation unit.

   B: Its missions are transporting personnel and materiel, liaison, reconnaissance, observation and so on.

3. A: What sorts of aircraft do they use for them?

   B: They use fairly large transport planes, small planes, helicopters and the like.

4. A: Are the pilots Air Force personnel?

   B: No, the personnel are all Army personnel.

5. A: Do they use fighters and bombers?

   B: No, they don't. But helicopters are equipped with machine guns and recoilless guns nowadays, so they can fight a little.

6. A: I heard that the Army uses planes for reconnaissance, but what sort of reconnaissance is it?

   B: Mainly it is to discover positions of the enemy troops and their equipment.

7. A: Then, what do you mean by observation?

   B: That means to observe whether the impact of artillery is accurate or not and to watch the enemy movements and other maneuvers within a certain area.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: By the way, who is to evacuate the wounded?

   B: Ground units do, but aviation units also help by using helicopters and the like.

9. A: Thank you very much today.

   B: You're welcome. Please come again.

10. A: Goodbye.

    B: Goodbye.

Lesson 32

D. Grammar Notes.

1. koto.

As was described previously, the koto is a noun, and it is usually preceded by some modifier. It has several different meanings, and its exact meaning depends on the context in which it occurs.

Examples:

Sore wa nan no koto desu ka.

'What does that mean?'

Kono koto wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.

'How do you say this expression in Japanese?'

Kono koto wa Tanaka-san ni itte okimashita.

'I've told this fact to Mr. Tanaka (in advance).'

Rikugun kookuu-tai no nimmu wa jin-in ya shizai o yusoo-suru koto desu.

'The mission of an army aviation unit is to transport personnel and materiel.'

It should be noted that Japanese verbs can modify a noun like koto directly as in the last example above. The modifier of this type will be further discussed later.

2. koto ni naru and koto ni natte iru.

Occurring after a modifying clause ending in the informal non-past form, the expression koto ni naru means 'it is decided or settled that' or 'it will be decided or settled that', and koto ni natte iru means 'it has been decided or settled or arranged that' or 'it is customary that', e.g.,

> Watakushi wa raigetsu Nihon e iku koto ni natte imasu.
>
> '(It's been decided that) I am to go to Japan next month.'
>
> Tanaka-san wa ashita kaeru koto ni natte imasu.
>
> '(It's been arranged that) Mr. Tanaka is to return tomorrow.'
>
> Gakkoo de wa mainichi roku-jikan benkyoo-suru koto ni natte imasu.
>
> '(It's been decided that) we are to study six hours a day in the school.'

Occurring after a modifying clause ending in the informal non-past form, the expression koto ni suru means to 'decide to do so-and-so', e.g.,

> Watakushi wa asatte iku koto ni shimashita.
>
> 'I decided to go the day after tomorrow.'
>
> Tanaka-san wa ikanai koto ni shimashita.
>
> 'Mr. Tanaka decided not to go.'

3. --- ka doo ka 'whether --- or not'.

Occurring after a question ending in the particle ka, doo ka substitutes for another question involving alternatives in an interrogation or statement of choice 'whether --- or not'.

Compare:

Asatte wa yasumi desu ka.

'Is the day after tomorrow a day off?'

Asatte wa yasumi ja arimasen ka.

'Isn't the day after tomorrow a day off?'

Asatte wa yasumi ka doo ka shirimasen.

'I don't know whether the day after tomorrow is a day off or not.'

Yamada-san wa ii sensei desu ka.

'Is Mr. Yamada a good teacher?'

Yamada-san wa ii sensei ja arimasen ka.

'Isn't Mr. Yamada a good teacher?'

Yamada-san wa ii sensei ka doo ka mada wakarimasen.

'I can't tell yet whether Mr. Yamada is a good teacher or not.'

Ano kata wa gunjin deshita ka.

'Was he a soldier?'

Ano kata wa gunjin ja arimasen deshita ka.

'Wasn't he a soldier.'

Ano kata gunjin datta ka doo ka shirimasen.

'I don't know whether he was a soldier or not.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Sono uchi wa ookii desu ka.

'Is that home large?'

Sono uchi wa chiisai desu ka.

'Is that home small?'

Sono uchi wa ookii ka doo ka shitte imasu ka.

'Do you know whether that home is large or not?'

Sono eiga wa yokatta n desu ka.

'Was that movie good?'

Sono eiga wa yoku wa nakatta n desu ka.

'Wasn't that movie good?'

Sono eiga wa yokatta ka doo ka tazunete mimasu.

'I'll ask whether that movie was good or not.'

Sumisu-san wa Nihongo o shitte imasu ka.

'Does Mr. Smith know Japanese?'

Sumisu-san wa Nihongo o shirimasen ka.

'Doesn't Mr. Smith know Japanese?'

Sumisu-san wa Nihongo o shitte iru ka doo ka tazunete kudasai.

'Please ask whether Mr. Smith knows Japanese or not.'

Tekigun no ichi o *hakken-shimashita* *ka*.

'Did they discover the position of the enemy force?'

Tekigun no ichi o *hakken-shimasen deshita* *ka*.

'Didn't they discover the position of the enemy force?'

Tekigun no ichi o *hakken-shita* *ka* *doo ka* shirimasen.

'I don't know whether they discovered the position of the enemy force or not.'

Note that the non-past of the copula (*da* or *desu*) doesn't occur before *ka* *doo ka*.

4. *-nai* 'within'.

-Nai, suffixed to some nouns and numbers, means 'within', e.g.,

gakkoo-nai	'within the school'
shidan-nai	'within a division'
ik-kagetsu-nai	'within a month'
ichi-jikan-nai	'within an hour'
kono chi-iki-nai	'within this area'

-Inai instead of *-nai* is more commonly used after numbers, e.g.,

ik-kagetsu-inai	'within a month'
ichi-jikan-inai	'within an hour'

6

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

5. nado 'and so on, and the like'.

The suffix nado was introduced in previous lessons. It occurs after one or more nouns and indicates that the preceding noun or nouns are mentioned as examples of a longer series. Nado may occur with or without other particles such as o.

Examples:

Booshi ya kutsu nado o kaimashita.
or
Booshi ya kutsu nado kaimashita.
'I bought a hat, shoes and the like.'

Lesson 32

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I've decided to do so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'it's been decided that I am to do so-and-so':

   a. Nihon e iku koto ni shimashita.

   b. San-gatsu kara Nihongo o narau koto ni shimashita.

   c. Ashita kara hataraku koto ni shimashita.

   d. Asatte kaeru koto ni shimashita.

   e. Mainichi oshieru koto ni shimashita.

2. Tell your friend that it is customary that:

   a. you help your wife every night.

   b. you don't work on Sundays.

   c. you see a doctor once a year.

   d. you receive a letter from your wife once a week.

   e. you eat three times a day.

3. Answer each of the following questions:

   a. Kansoku to iu no wa nani o suru koto desu ka.

   b. Kanshi to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

   c. Teisatsu to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

   d. Idoo to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

   e. Sampo to iu no wa nan no koto desu ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

4. Answer each of the following questions by saying 'you don't know whether X or Y':

   a. Tanaka-san wa gunjin desu ka.

   b. Yamada-san wa sensei deshita ka.

   c. Tookyoo no fuyu wa samui desu ka.

   d. Suzuki-san no jidoosha wa yasukatta n desu ka.

   e. Ima ame ga futte imasu ka.

   f. Taroo wa nete imashita ka.

   g. Anata, konshuu no do-yoobi ni gorufu o yarimasu ka.

   h. Kodomo-tachi wa yuuhan o tabemashita ka.

   i. Sumisu-san wa Nihongo ga dekimasu ka.

   j. Kaneko-san no ojii-san wa naku natta n desu ka.

5. Tell your friend that you can't tell whether:

   a. it's a bomber or a transport plane.

   b. your Japanese is accurate or not.

   c. the plane has discovered the position of the enemy troops or not.

   d. he is a pilot or not.

   e. an army aviation unit employs fighters or not.

6. Tell your men that their mission is:

   a. to observe the enemy movements within this area.

   b. to evacuate the wounded within one hour.

   c. to transport personnel and materiel.

   d. to discover the positions of the enemy equipment.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. to watch the enemy maneuvers within this area.

Lesson 33

A. Perception Drill.

1.		sentoo	combat, fighting
		sentoo-suru	fight (v.i.)
		koohei	engineer (Army)
		sentoo-koohei	combat engineer
	a.	Sentoo-koohei wa donna koto o shimasu ka.	What sorts of things do combat enginners do?
		kawa	river
		hashi	bridge
		kakeru	suspend, lay across (v.t.)
		hashi o kakeru	build a bridge
	b.	Kawa ni hashi o kaketari shimasu.	They build bridges over rivers among other things?
		yooi	easy (copula noun)
		suru	make (v.t.)
		yooi ni suru	make easy, facilitate
	c.	Sono hoka iroiro no koto o shite, hohei ya kikoohei no sentoo o yooi ni shimasu.	They make it easy for infantry and armor to fight by doing various things.
		bakuha	demolition
		bakuha-suru	demolish (v.t.)
		--- koto ga aru	there are occasions when ---, sometimes
	d.	Sentoo-koohei wa hashi o bakuha-suru koto mo arimasu ka.	Do combat engineers sometimes demolish bridges?

Lesson 33

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	e.	Mochiron, arimasu.	Of course, they do.
2.		tame	purpose (or reason)
		tame ni	for the purpose
		yooi ni suru tame ni	for the purpose of making easy, in order to make easy
	a.	Sentoo-koohei wa hohei no sentoo o yooi ni suru tame ni dooro o tsukurimasu.	Combat engineers build roads in order to make it easy for infantry to fight.
		jirai	mine
	b.	Jirai wa nan no tame ni, tsukaimasu ka.	What do they use mines for?
		boogyo	defense
		boogyo-suru	defend (v.t.)
	c.	Boogyo no tame ni tsukaimasu.	They use them for defense.
3.	a.	Sentoo-koohei wa donna jirai o tsukaimasu ka.	What sort of mines do combat engineers use?
		taijin	antipersonnel
		taijin-jirai	antipersonnel mine
		taisensha	antitank
		taisensha-jirai	antitank mine
		shikake-jirai	boobytrap
	b.	Taijin-jirai ya taisensha jirai ya shikake-jirai nado o tsukaimasu.	They use antipersonnel and antitank mines, boobytraps, and so forth.

Lesson 33

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	fusetsu	laying (mines, cables, etc.)
	fusetsu-suru	lay (v.t.)
c.	Sonna jirai wa donna tokoro ni fusetsu-shimasu ka.	What sort of place do they lay such mines?
	kinsetsu	approach
	kinsetsu-suru	approach (v.i.)
	kinsetsu-ro	avenue of approach
d.	Teki no kinsetsu-ro ni fusetsu-shimasu.	They lay them in in the avenues of approach of the enemy.
	jokyo	removal, elimination
	jokyo-suru	remove (v.t.)
e.	Sentoo-koohei wa jirai no jokyo mo shimasu ka.	Do combat engineers remove mines, too?
f.	Ee, shimasu.	Yes, they do.
	jirai-gen	minefield
	keikai	clearing
g.	Jirai-gen no keikai mo shimasu.	They also clear minefields.
4.	hakai	destruction, demolition
	hakai-suru	destroy, demolish (v.t.)
	toki	time
	hakai-shitai toki ni	at the time when one wants to destroy

Lesson 33

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Hashi o hakai-shitai toki ni wa, doo shimasu ka.	What do they do when they want to destroy bridges?
	bakuyaku	high explosive
	TNT-bakuyaku	T.N.T.
b.	TNT-bakuyaku o tsukaimasu.	They use T.N.T.
	tenka	ignition
	tenka-suru	ignite (v.t.)
c.	Bakuyaku wa doo shite tenka-shimasu ka.	How do they ignite the high explosive?
	doobakusen	detonating cord
	tsukeru	attach (v.t.)
d.	Bakuyaku ni doobakusen o tsukete tenka-shimasu.	They ignite the high explosive by attaching a detonating cord to it.
	shinkan	fuse
	jigen-shinkan	time fuse
e.	Jigen-shinkan o tsukau koto mo arimasu.	They sometimes use time fuses.
5.	koozoo	structure, construction
a.	Jirai no koozoo ni tsuite setsumei-shite kudasai.	Please explain about the structure of a mine.
	raikan	fuse
	kibaku-suru	detonate, prime (v.t.)

Lesson 33

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	b.	Naka ni bakuyaku ga atte, raikan de kibaku-shimasu.	There is high explosive inside, and it is detonated with a fuse.
6.	a.	Koohei no shigoto ni wa nani ga ichi-ban taisetsu desu ka.	What's most important for the work of engineers?
		gijutsu	technique, technical skill
	b.	Gijutsu no kunren ga ichi-ban taisetsu desu.	A technical training is most important.

Lesson 33

B. Dialogue.

Combat Engineer.

1. A: Sentoo-koohei no nimmu wa nan desu ka.

B: Hohei ya kikoohei no sentoo o yooi ni suru tame ni hotondo nan demo shimasu.

2. A: Kawa ni hashi o kaketari shimasu ka.

B: Mochiron shimasu. Aru ba-ai ni wa hashi o bakuha suru koto mo arimasu.

3. A: Jirai no fusetsu wa?

B: Jirai no fusetsu wa koohei mo hohei mo shimasu. Mata jirai-gen no keikai ya shikake-jirai no fusetsu,jokyo nado mo shimasu.

4. A: Jirai wa nan no tame ni tsukaimasu ka.

B: Boogyo ni tsukaimasu. Teki no kinsetsu-ro ni taijin-jirai, taisensha-jirai nado o fusetsu-shimasu.

5. A: Jirai no koozoo ni tsuite chotto setsumei-shite kudasai.

B: Naka ni bakuyaku ga arimasu. Soshite, raikan ga atte, sore de kibaku-shimasu.

6. A: Hashi nado o hakai-shitai toki ni wa, doo shimasu ka.

B: TNT-bakuyaku o tsukaimasu. Sono bakuyaku ni doobakusen o tsukete, sore de tenka-shite bakuha-shimasu.

7. A: Jigen-shinkan o tsukau koto mo arimasu ka.

B: Ee, arimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Koohei no shigoto wa sootoo gijutsu no kunren ga irimasu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Nagai kunren ga irimasu.

Lesson 33

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What is the mission of combat engineers?

B: They do almost anything to make it easy for infantry and armor to fight.

2. A: Do they build bridges over rivers among other things?

B: Of course, they do. In some instances, they demolish bridges, too.

3. A: How about laying mines?

B: Both engineers and infantry men lay mines. And they also clear minefields, lay or remove booby-traps, and the like.

4. A: What do they use mines for?

B: They use them for defense. They lay antipersonnel and antitank mines in the avenues of approach of the enemy.

5. A: Please explain a little about the structure of a mine.

B: There is high explosive inside. And there is a fuse with which the high explosive is detonated.

6. A: What do they do when they want to destroy a bridge and the like?

B: They use T.N.T. They attach a detonating cord to it, ignite (the explosive) with it, and demolish (the bridge).

7. A: Do they sometimes use time fuses?

B: Yes, they do.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: The engineer's work requires quite a technical training, doesn't it?

B: That's right. It requires a long training.

Lesson 33

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Noun plus ni suru and -ku form of I-adjective plus suru.

The constructions 'a noun plus ni naru' and 'the -ku form of an I-adjective plus naru' have already been introduced, e.g.,

Tanaka-san wa sensei ni narimashita.
'Mr. Tanaka became a teacher.'
Jidoosha ga furuku narimashita.
'The car became old.'

To express the idea 'someone makes X (into) Y', the verb suru 'make' is used in place of naru 'become' in the same kinds of constructions and the direct object X, if mentioned, is denoted by the particle o, e.g.,

Tanaka-san wa kodomo-san o isha ni shimashita.
'Mr. Tanaka made his child a doctor.'
Koohei wa hohei no sentoo o yooi ni shimasu.
'Engineers make it easy for infantry to fight.'
Yamada-san wa jidoosha o yasuku shimashita.
'Mr. Yamada made his car cheap.'
or
'Mr. Yamada reduced the price of his car.'

Compare the following:

Gunjin ni narimashita.
'He became a soldier.'

Lesson 33

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Gunjin ni shimashita.

'I made him a soldier.'

Nihongo no seito ni narimashita.

'He became a student of the Japanese language.'

Nihongo no seito ni shimashita.

'I made him a student of the Japanese language.'

Ookiku narimashita.

'It became big.'

Ookiku shimashita.

'I made it big.'

Kuraku narimashita.

'It became dark.'

Heya o kuraku shimashita.

'I made the room dark.'
or
'I darkened the room.'

2. Non-past form plus koto ga aru.

Occurring after the non-past form of inflected words, koto ga aru means 'there are times when ---, sometimes', e.g.,

Ichi-nichi ni go-jikan oshieru koto ga arimasu.

'I sometimes teach five hours a day.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Ichi-nichi ni go-jikan *oshieru* *koto wa arimasen*.

'I *never* *teach* five hours a day.'

Ichi-nichi ni go-jikan *oshieru* *koto ga arimashita*.

'I *sometimes* *taught* five hours a day.'

Ichi-nichi ni go-jikan *oshieru* *koto wa arimasen deshita*.

'I *never* *taught* five hours a day.'

Chitto mo *oshienai* *koto ga arimasu*.

'I *sometimes* *don't teach* at all.'

Ichi-nichi ni yo-jikan *oshienai* *koto wa arimasen*.

'I *always* *teach* four hours a day.'

Taihen *isogashii* *koto ga arimasu*.

'I'm *sometimes* very busy.'

Kodomo wa *benri na* *koto ga arimasu*.

'Children are handy sometimes.'

3. *tame* 'purpose' or 'reason, cause'.

The use of the particle *ni* to indicate the purpose of an action has already been introduced.

Occurring after a noun plus *no* or the affirmative non-past form of verbs, tame means either 'purpose' or 'reason, cause'.

Compare:

a. tame ni 'for the purpose of, in order to':

Dare no tame ni hataraite imasu ka.

'Whose sake are you working for?'

Kodomo no tame ni hataraite imasu.

'I'm working for the sake of my children.'

Nihongo o benkyoo-suru tame ni hon o takusan kaimashita.

or

Nihongo o benkyoo-suru no ni hon o takusan kaimashita.

'I bought many books in order to study Japanese.'

Tanaka-san wa Amerika ni Eigo o narau tame ni kimashita.

or

Tanaka-san wa Amerika ni Eigo o narai ni kimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka came to America to learn English.'

Sentoo-koohei wa hohei no sentoo o yooi ni suru tame ni dooro o tsukurimasu.

or

Sentoo-koohei wa hohei no sentoo o yooi ni suru no ni dooro o tsukurimasu.

'Combat engineers build roads in order to make it easy for infantry to fight.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

b. tame ni 'for the reason, because':

Ame no tame ni michi ga waruku narimashita.
or
Ame de michi ga waruku narimashita.

'Roads became bad because of rain.'

Maiban osoku made benkyoo-suru tame ni asa hayaku okiru koto ga dekimasen.
or
Maiban osoku made benkyoo-suru node, asa hayaku okiru koto ga dekimasen.

'I can't get up early in the morning because I study till late every night.'

Occurring after an adjective and the past form of inflected words tame ni means 'because', e.g.,

Takai tame ni kau koto ga dekimasen.

'I can't buy it because it's expensive.'

Ame ga furanai tame ni mizu ga arimasen.

'There is no water because it doesn't rain.'

Samukatta tame ni doko e mo ikimasen deshita.

'I didn't go anywhere because it was cold.'

Ammari takusan tabeta tame ni byooki ni narimashita.

'I became sick because I ate too much.'

Lesson 33

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

4. Adjectival clauses (or sentence modifiers).

In Japanese any modifier precedes the word modified. The use of I-adjectives, *NO*-adjectives, and *NA*-adjectives to modify a following noun has already been introduced, e.g.,

samui hi	'a cold day'
chiisai ie	'a small house'
warui kodomo	'a bad child'
murasaki no hana	'a purple flower'
Nihon no gakkoo	'schools in Japan'
watakushi no sensei	'my teacher'
jochuu no Hanako	'Hanako, the maid'
Tookyoo kara no tomodachi	'a friend from Tokyo'
taisetsu na hon	'an important book'
kirei na musume	'a pretty daughter'

As was briefly explained before, Japanese verbs may also be used attributively to *directly* modify nouns that follow, e.g.,

taberu mono	'things to eat'
suru koto	'things to do'

In Japanese almost any sentence may be used as an adjectival clause to modify the noun that follows it without any connecting word by making whatever changes are necessary.

The adjectival clause may end in the informal non-past or past form of I-adjectives.

Compare:

Samui desu.	*samui* hi
'It's cold.'	'a cold day' (Lit: 'a day *which* is cold')
Warui desu.	*warui* kodomo
'He's bad.'	'a bad child' (Lit: 'a child *who* is bad')
Shirimasen.	*shiranai* hito
'They don't know.'	'those *who* don't know'
Tabetai desu.	*tabetai* mono
'I want to eat.'	'things I want to eat'
Takai deshita.	*takakatta* mono
'They were expensive.'	'things *that* were expensive'
Ikimasen deshita.	*ikanakatta* hito
'They didn't go.'	'those *who* didn't go'
Naraitai desu.	*naraitakatta* koto
'I want to learn.'	'things I wanted to learn'

The sentence ending in 'a noun plus *desu* or *da*' is changed to 'the noun plus *no*'; 'a noun plus *deshita* or *datta n desu*' to 'the noun plus *datta*'.

Compare:

Murasaki desu.	*murasaki no* hana
'It's purple.'	'a purple flower' (Lit: 'a flower *which* is purple')
Jochuu desu.	*jochuu no* Hanako
'She is a maid.'	'Hanako, the maid' (Lit: 'Hanako *who* is a maid')
Murasaki deshita.	*murasaki datta* hana
'It was purple.'	'the flower *that* was purple'
Jochuu deshita.	*jochuu datta* Hanako
'She was a maid.'	'Hanako *who* was a maid'

The sentence ending in 'a copula noun plus *desu* or *da*' is changed to 'the noun plus *na*'; 'a copula noun plus *deshita* or *datta n desu*' to 'the copula noun plus *datta*'.

Compare:

Taisetsu desu.	*taisetsu na* hon
'It's important.'	'an important book' (Lit: 'a book which is important')
Taisetsu deshita.	*taisetsu datta* hon
'It was important.'	'a book *which* was important'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The adjectival clause usually end in the informal non-past or past form of verbs.

Compare:

Hon wa koko ni arimasu.	koko ni aru hon
'The book is here.'	'the book which is here'
Tomodachi wa Nihongo o shitte imasu.	Nihongo o shitte iru tomodachi
'My friend knows Japanese.'	'my friend who knows Japanese'
Seito wa hachi-ji ni kimashita.	hachi-ji ni kita seito
'Students came at 8 o'clock.'	'students who came at 8 o'clock'
Taroo wa hayaku okimashita.	hayaku okita Taroo
'Taro got up early.'	'Taro who got up early'

The subject of an adjectival clause, if mentioned, is indicated by the particle no or ga and not by wa.

Compare:

Ano hito wa te ga arimasen.	te no nai hito or (te ga nai hito)
'He has no hands.'	'the man without hands' or 'the man who has no hands'

Lesson 33

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Ano kata wa te ga kirei desu.	te *no* kirei na kata or (te *ga* kirei na kata)
'She has pretty hands.' or 'Her hands are pretty.'	'a person with pretty hands' or 'a person *who* has pretty hands'
Watakushi wa hon o yomimashita.	watakushi no yonda hon or (watakushi *ga* yonda hon)
'I read a book.'	'the book *that* I read'

In Japanese not only are there no words which correspond exactly to such English connecting words as 'that, which, who, when, where, why' but certain particles do not occur in complex sentences.

Compare:

Watakushi wa gakkoo *e* ikimasu.
'I go to school.'
Watakushi ga iku gakkoo wa tooi desu.
'The school *to which* I go is far.'

Tanaka-san wa ookii uchi *ni* sunde imasu.
'Mr. Tanaka lives in a large home.'
Tanaka-san no sunde iru uchi wa ookii desu.
'The home *in which* Mr. Tanaka lives is large.'

The noun *toki* means 'time', and, when it is modified by a clause, its English equivalent is 'when'.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Yuki ga furimasu.

'It snows.'

Yuki no furu toki wa samui desu.

'When it snows, it's cold.'

Seito ga kimashita.

'The student came.'

Seito no kita toki ni wa mada nete imashita.

'When the student came, I was still in bed.'
(Lit: At the time when the student came,
I was still sleeping.)

The noun tokoro means 'place', and, when it is modified by a clause, its English equivalent is 'where'.

Compare:

Ki ga arimasu.

'There are trees.'

Tori wa ki no aru tokoro ni imasu.

'Birds are where trees are.'
(Lit: Birds are at the place where trees are.)

Dare mo imasen.

'There is nobody.'

Dare mo inai tokoro de hanashimashoo.

'Let's talk where there is nobody.'
(Lit: Let's talk at the place where there
is nobody.)

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'X became Y' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'someone made X into Y':

   a. Tanaka-san no musuko-san wa sensei ni narimashita.

   b. Yamada-san no jinan wa junsa ni narimashita.

   c. Sasaki-san no jinan wa junsa ni narimashita.

   d. Kyooshitsu ga jimushitsu ni narimashita.

   e. Buraun-tai-i wa chuutai-choo ni narimashita.

   f. Zubon ga mijikaku narimashita.

   g. Ofuro ga atsuku narimashita.

   h. Michi ga hiroku narimashita.

   i. Uchi ga ookiku narimashita.

   j. Daidokoro ga kitanaku narimashita.

2. Answer each of the following questions affirmatively by saying that there are times when the given statement is true:

   a. Sentoo-koohei wa hashi o bakuha-shimasu ka.

   b. Sentoo-koohei wa jirai o jokyo-shimasu ka.

   c. Sentoo-koohei wa teki no kinsetsu-ro ni taijin-jirai o fusetsu-shimasu ka.

   d. Ichi-nichi ni ni-do shika tabemasen ka.

   e. Do-yoobi ni mo hatarakimasu ka.

   f. Gakkoo de chuushoku o torimasu ka.

   g. Doobakusen de bakuyaku o tenka shimasu ka.

   h. Hohei wa shikake-jirai o jokyo-shimasu ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

3. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences into a complex sentence in such a way that the first sentence becomes either the purpose or the reason for the second sentence using the word tame:

   a. (1) Sentoo-koohei wa hohei ya kikoohei no sentoo o yooi ni shimasu.

      (2) Sentoo-koohei wa kawa ni hashi o kakemasu.

   b. (1) Sentoo-koohei wa hashi o hakai-shimasu.

      (2) Sentoo-koohei wa TNT-bakuyaku o tsukaimasu.

   c. (1) Sentoo-koohei wa teki no kinsetsu o muzukashiku shimasu.

      (2) Sentoo-koohei wa teki no kinsetsu-ro ni jirai o fusetsu-shimasu.

   d. (1) Guriin-san wa Nihongo o shirimasen.

      (2) Guriin-san wa michi o tazuneru koto ga dekimasen.

   e. (1) Tanaka-san wa byooki desu.

      (2) Tanaka-san wa hataraku koto ga dekimasen.

   f. (1) Taihen samui deshita.

      (2) Kaze o hikimashita.

   g. (1) Taihen takusan tabemashita.

      (2) Byooki ni narimashita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

4. Make up an appropriate answer for each of the following questions:

   a. Dare no tame ni hataraite imasu ka.

   b. Nan no tamei ni Nihongo o naratte imasu ka.

   c. Sentoo-koohei wa boogyo no tame ni donna koto o shimasu ka.

   d. Nan no tame ni okane ga takusan irimasu ka.

   e. Ame no tame ni michi wa doo narimasu ka.

5. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessary and using the first sentence of each pair as a sentence modifier, combine the two sentences into a complex sentence:

   a. (1) Tatte imasu.

      (2) Tanaka-san desu.

   b. (1) Nani ka tabete imasu.

      (2) Watakushi no musuko desu.

   c. (1) Hon o yonde imasu.

      (2) Sumisu to iu seito desu.

   d. (1) Mado ga ooi desu.

      (2) Uchi o kaimashita.

   e. (1) Sensei desu.

      (2) Yukiko-san wa mainichi go-jikan-zutsu oshiemasu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

f. (1) Chuutai-choo desu.

(2) Kawata-tai-i wa Tookyoo e ikimashita.

g. (1) Nihongo ga yoku dekimasu.

(2) Sumisu-san wa Okinawa e itte imasu.

h. (1) Me ga ookii desu.

(2) Hanako-san wa Tanaka-san no uchi no jochuu desu.

i. (1) Watakushi wa Tookyoo de kaimashita.

(2) Jidoosha wa taihen takakatta n desu.

j. (1) Kodomo-tachi wa mainichi itte imasu.

(2) Gakkoo wa koko kara kanari tooi desu.

k. (1) Suzuki-san ga yonde imasu.

(2) Watakushi no hon wa taihen ii desu.

l. (1) Tanaka-san ga hairimashita.

(2) Heya wa Yamada-san no jimushitsu desu.

6. Ask the following questions and make up an appropriate answer for each:

a. Ask your friend what you were doing when he came to visit you last night.

b. Ask your instructor, who teaches when he is not present.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

c. Ask your company commander, who commands his company when he is sick.

d. Ask your friend, whom he asks questions when he doesn't understand Japanese.

e. Ask your friend what he wanted to be when he was a child.

Lesson 34

A. Perception Drill.

1.		zensen	front line
		tsuushin	communications
		tsuushin-suru	communicate (v.)
	a.	Zensen no tsuushin ni wa donna mono o tsukaimasu ka.	What sort of things do they use for front line communications?
		denwa	telephone
		denwa o kakeru	telephone (v.i.)
		denshin	telegraph
		rajio or musenki	radio
	b.	Denwa, denshin, rajio nado o tsukaimasu.	They use telephones, telegraphs, radios and the like.
2.		densen	electric wire
		hitsuyoo	necessary (copula noun)
	a.	Denwa wa densen ga hitsuyoo desu.	Telephones need electric wires.
		fuben	inconvenient (copula noun)
	b.	Desu kara, denwa wa fuben desu.	So, telephones are inconvenient.
3.		musen	wireless
		musen-tsuushin	wireless communications
	a.	Musen-tsuushin ni wa rajio o tsukaimasu.	They use radios for wireless communications.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	boogai	interference
	boogai-suru	interfere, jam, obstruct (v.t.)
	booju	interception (wireless)
	booju-suru	intercept (wireless, v.t.)
b.	Musen-tsuushin ni wa boogai ya booju ga ooi desu.	There are many interferences and interceptions in wireless communications.
4.	soshiki	system, organization
	tsuushin-soshiki	communication system
	tsuushin-moo	communication network
a.	Zensen no tsuushin-soshiki ni wa omo ni rajio o tsukaimasu.	They use mainly radios for the front line communication system.
	wake	reason
b.	Doo iu wake desu ka.	Why is that?
	kidoo	maneuver
c.	Tsuushin wa butai no kidoo ni kankei ga aru kara desu.	Because communcations are related to the maneuver of troops.
	don-don	rapidly
	idoo	movement
	idoo-suru	move
	benri	convenient (copula noun)

Lesson 34

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Butai ga don-don idoo-shite iru toki ni wa rajio no hoo ga benri desu.	When the troops are moving rapidly, radios are more convenient.
5.	shikijo or CP	command post
	renraku	liaison
	renraku-suru	get in touch, contact, communicate (v.)
	tamotsu	maintain (v.t.)
a.	Shikijo wa itsumo butai to renraku o tamochimasu.	The command post always maintains liaison with troops.
	hookoku	report
	hookoku-suru	report (v.t.)
	joohoo	information or intelligence
	kaku-	respective, each (prefix)
	kaku-butai	each unit, respective units
b.	Shikijo wa, joohoo ga haitte kuru to sugu, kaku-butai ni renraku-suru koto ga arimasu.	The command post sometimes gets in touch with each unit as soon as information comes in.
	de mo	even if it is
	-nai	do not
	-nakereba	if they don't
	narimasen	formal equivalent of naranai 'won't do'

Lesson 34

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	-nakereba narimasen	must, have to
	tamotsu	maintain
	tamotanai	do not maintain
	tamotanakereba	if they don't maintain
	tamotanakereba narimasen	must maintain
c.	Idoo-chuu de mo renraku o tamotanakereba narimasen.	Even during the movement, it must maintain liaison.
d.	Zensen de wa ima de mo denwa o tsukatte imasu ka.	Do they use telephones in front lines even now?
	-nai	do not
	-nakute mo	even if they don't
	ii desu	it's all right it's good
	-nakute mo ii desu	don't have to, need not (Lit: even if they don't --- , it's all right.
	tsukau	use (v.t.)
	tsukawanai	don't use
	tsukawanakute mo ii desu	they don't have to use, they need not use
e.	Denwa wa tsukawanakute mo ii desu.	They don't have to use telephones.

Lesson 34

A. Perception Drill, continued.

6.		fuban	panel
		shingoo	signal
		fuban-shingoo	panel signal
	a.	Ima de mo fuban-shingoo nado o tsukatte imasu ka.	Do they use such things as panel signals even now?
	b.	Denwa ya rajio de renraku-suru koto no dekinai toki ni wa fuban-shingoo no yoo na mono o tsukawanakereba narimasen.	When they can't communicate by means of telephone and radio, they must use things like panel signals.
		ukeru	receive (v.t.)
		ukenakute mo ii	need not receive, don't have to receive
	c.	Hei wa fuban no yoo na shingoo o tsukau tame ni, kunren o ukenakute mo ii desu ka.	Don't soldiers have to receive the training in order to use signals like panels?
	d.	Iie, ukenakereba narimasen.	Yes, they must receive it.

Lesson 34

B. Dialogue.

Communications.

1. A: Kyoo wa zensen no tsuushin-soshiki ni tusite hanashite kudasaimasen ka.

B: Zensen de wa denwa no tsuushin ga sukunaku natte, musen-tsuushin ga ooku narimashita.

2. A: Denwa wa naze sukunaku narimashita ka.

B: Fuben da kara desu.

3. A: Denwa wa zensen no tsuushin ni wa naze fuben desu ka.

B: Densen ga hitsuyoo da kara desu. Shikashi onaji tokoro ni nagai aida iru toki ni wa, denshin ya denwa no hoo ga ii desu.

4. A: Doo iu wake desu ka.

B: Denshin ya denwa wa boogai mo booju mo sukunai kara desu.

5. A: Dewa tsuushin wa butai no kidoo ni mo kankei ga aru n desu ne.

B: Soo desu. Butai ga don-don idoo-shite iru toki ni wa, shikijo wa joohoo ga haitte kuru to sugu sore o kaku-butai ni tsuushin-shinakereba narimasen. Sono tame ni itsumo kaku-butai to renraku o tamotte inakereba narimasen.

6. A: Kaku-butai to no renraku o tamotsu tame ni nani ga hitsuyoo desu ka.

B: Musenki ga hitsuyoo desu.

Lesson 34

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Dewa zensen de wa denwa wa tsukawanakute mo ii n desu ne.

B: Soo desu.

8. A: Fuban-singoo nado wa ima de mo taisetsu desu ka.

B: Mochiron taisetsu desu.

9. A: Donna toki ni sonna shingoo o tsukaimasu ka.

B: Denwa o kakeru koto mo rajio de renraku-suru koto mo dekinai toki ni sonna shingoo o tsukaimasu.

10. A: Hei wa sonna shingoo o tsukau tame ni kunren o ukenakute mo ii desu ka.

B: Iie, kunren o ukenakereba narimasen.

Lesson 34

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Won't you please tell me about the front line communication system today?

   B: In front lines, telephone communications have decreased and wireless communications have increased.

2. A: Why have telephones decreased?

   B: Because they are inconvenient.

3. A: Why are telephones inconvenient for front line communications?

   B: Because electric wires are necessary. But when they stay at the same place for a long time, telephones and telegraphs are better.

4. A: Why is that?

   B: Because telephones and telegraphs have less interferences and interceptions.

5. A: Then, are communications related to the maneuver of troops?

   B: That's right. When troops are moving rapidly, the command post must communicate it to each unit immediately upon receipt of information. For that reason, it has to maintain constant liaison with each unit.

6. A: What's necessary to maintain liaison with each unit?

   B: A radio is necessary.

7. A: Then they need not use telephones in front lines, do they?

   B: That's right.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Are such things as panel signals important even now?

B: Of course, they are.

9. A: When do they use such signals?

B: When they can neither telephone nor communicate by means of radio, they use such signals.

10. A: Is it all right (even) if soldiers don't receive the training in order to use such signals?

B: No, they must receive it.

Lesson 34

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Informal non-past plus to sugu.

Occurring after the informal non-past form, to sugu means 'just as soon as, immediately upon, without hesitation', e.g.,

Uchi ni kaeru to sugu yuuhan o tabemasu.

'I have supper just as soon as I go home.'

Joohoo ga haitte kuru to sugu shikijo ni hookoku-shimasu.

'As soon as information comes in, they report it to the command post.'

Aru hito wa nan demo yasui to sugu kaimasu.

'Some people buy anything without hesitation if it's cheap.'

Aru kodomo wa samui to sugu kaze o hikimasu.

'Some children catch colds right away when it's cold.'

Nihonjin da to sugu wakaru n desu ga.

'The Japanese would understand it right away, but --- .'
(Lit: If he is a Japanese, he understands it immediately, but --- .)

Hitsuyoo da to sugu kau n desu ga.

'If it's necessary, I'll buy it without reservation, but --- .'

Lesson 34

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

2. *-nakereba* *narimasen* 'must'.

The use of *-nai* or *nai* to change the affirmative to the corresponding negative has already been introduced, e.g.,

Affirmative		Negative	
kaku	'write'	kaka*nai*	'don't write'
taberu	'eat'	tabe*nai*	'don't eat'
suru	'do'	shi*nai*	'don't do'
kuru	'come'	ko*nai*	'don't come'
ookii		ookiku *nai*	'isn't big'
atarashii		atarashiku *nai*	'isn't new'

-Nakereba or *nakereba* is one of the conditional forms of *-nai* or *nai*, and it means 'if one doesn't' or 'if it isn't, if there isn't'. The word *narimasen* is the formal equivalent of *naranai*, meaning 'it won't do, it's bad'. The phrase *-nakereba narimasen* or *nakereba narimasen* means 'if one doesn't do so-and-so, it won't do' or 'if it isn't so-and-so, it's bad'. Thus the meaning of the phrase is equivalent to 'have to do or be so-and-so' or '*must* do or be so-and-so' in English.

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

-Nakereba narimasen is suffixed to the stem of the -nai form of verbs, and nakereba narimasen occurs where nai occurs.

Examples:

'don't do, isn't'		'must do, must be'
kakanai	'don't write'	kakanakereba narimasen 'must write'
hanasanai	'don't talk'	hanasanakereba narimasen 'must talk'
tatanai	'don't stand up'	tatanakereba narimasen 'must stand up'
shinanai	'don't die'	shinanakereba narimasen 'must die'
narawanai	'don't learn'	narawanakereba narimasen 'must learn'
yomanai	'don't read'	yomanakereba narimasen 'must read'
kaeranai	'don't go back'	kaeranakereba narimasen 'must go back'
tobanai	'don't fly'	tobanakereba narimasen 'must fly'
oyoganai	'don't swim'	oyoganakereba narimasen 'must swim'
tabenai	'don't eat'	tabenakereba narimasen 'must eat'
minai	'don't see'	minakereba narimasen 'must see'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

shinai	'don't do'	shinakereba narimasen 'must do'
konai	'don't come'	konakereba narimasen 'must come'
ookiku nai	'isn't big'	ookiku nakereba narimasen 'has to be big'
yoku nai	'isn't good'	yoku nakereba narimasen 'has to be good'
otona de nai	'he isn't an adult'	otona de nakereba narimasen 'it has to be an adult'
benri de nai	'it isn't convenient'	benri de nakereba narimasen 'it has to be convenient'
okane ga nai	'I don't have money'	okane ga nakereba narimasen 'I have to have money'

Narimasen of *-nakereba narimasen* or *nakereba narimasen* may be replaced by *warui desu* 'it's bad', *dame desu* 'it's no use', or *ikemasen* 'it won't do' without changing the meaning of the phrase.

3. *-nakute mo ii desu* 'don't have to, need not'.

-Nakute or *nakute* is the TE form of *-nai* or *nai*. *-Nakute mo* or *nakute mo* means 'even if one doesn't do so-and-so' or 'even if there isn't, even if it isn't'. The phrase *-nakute mo ii desu* or *nakute mo ii desu* means 'even if one doesn't do so-and-so' or 'even if it isn't, even if there isn't'. Thus, the meaning of the phrase is

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

equivalent to 'don't have to do or be so-and-so' or 'need not do or be so-and-so' in English.

-Nakute mo ii desu is suffixed to the stem of the -nai form of verbs, and nakute mo ii desu occurs where nai occurs.

Examples:

kakanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to write'
hanasanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to talk'
tatanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to stand up'
shinanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to die'
narawanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to learn'
yomanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to read'
kaeranakute mo ii desu	'don't have to go back'
tobanakute mo ii desu	'don't have to fly'
oyoganakute mo ii desu	'don't have to swim'
tabenakute mo ii desu	'don't have to eat'
minakute mo ii desu	'don't have to see'
ookiku nakute mo ii desu	'don't have to be big'
yoku nakute mo ii desu	'don't have to be good'
otona de nakute mo ii desu	'it need not be an adult'
benri de nakute mo ii desu	'it doesn't have to be convenient'
okane wa nakute mo ii desu	'I don't have to have money'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

-Nakute mo ii desu or *nakute mo ii desu* occurs in the *IIE* answer to a *-nakereba narimasen* or *nakereba narimasen* question, and *-nakereba narimasen* or *nakereba narimasen* occurs in the *IIE* answer to a *-nakute mo ii desu* or *nakute mo ii desu* question.

Examples:

Ikanakereba narimasen ka.

'Must I go?'

Iie, *ikanakute mo ii desu*.

'No, you need not go.'

Ikanakute mo ii desu ka.

'Is it alright (even) if I don't go?'

Iie, *ikanakereba narimasen*.

'No, you must go.'

Atarashiku *nakereba narimasen* ka.

'Must it be new?'

Iie, atarashiku *nakute mo ii desu*.

'No, it need not be new.'

Atarashiku *nakute mo ii desu* ka.

'Is it alright (even) if it's not new?'

Iie, atarashiku *nakereba narimasen*.

'No, it has to be new.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Otoko de nakereba narimasen ka.

'Does it have to be a man?'

Iie, otoko de nakute mo ii desu.

'No, it doesn't have to be a man.'

Otoko de nakute mo ii desu ka.

'Is it alright (even) if it isn't a man?'

Iie, otoko de nakereba narimasen.

'No, it has to be a man.'

The particle mo 'even' after -nakute or nakute is sometimes dropped, e.g.,

Ikanakute ii desu.

'You need not go.'

Atarashii no de nakute ii desu.

'It need not be a new one.'

4. kaku- 'respective, each'.

Kaku 'respective, each' is prefixed to some nouns, e.g.,

kaku-butai	'each unit, respective units'
kaku-chuutai	'each company, respective companies'
kaku-gakkoo	'each school, respective schools'
kaku-kyooshitsu	'each classroom, respective classrooms'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I did or do so-and-so after doing so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'I did or do so-and-so just as soon as I did or do so-and-so':

   a. Uchi ni kaette kara, yuuhan o tabemasu.

   b. Asahan o tabete kara, dekakemasu.

   c. Asa okite kara, rajio o kikimasu.

   d. Gakkoo e itte kara, benkyoo-shimasu.

   e. Nihon e itte kara, byooki ni narimashita.

   f. Uchi o katte kara, kekkon-shimashita.

   g. Tegami wa kaite kara, dashimasu.

2. Tell your instructor that:

   a. you'll telephone him just as soon as you go home.

   b. you'll get in touch with him just as soon as the necessary information comes in.

   c. your wife buys anything without reservation if it's inexpensive.

   d. you open the book just as soon as he enters the classroom.

   e. you'll go to the beach just as soon as the weather gets hot.

   f. you'll go to see the cherry blossoms just as soon as they bloom.

3. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions:

   a. Do-yoobi ni mo hatarakanakereba narimasen ka.

   b. Nihongo de hanasanakute mo ii desu ka.

   c. Chuutai ni renraku-shinakereba narimasen ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

d. Kaku-butai ni hookoku-shinakereba narimasen ka.

e. "A" chuutai wa kyoo idoo-shinakute mo ii desu ka.

f. Tanaka-san no sumitai uchi wa ookikunakute mo ii desu ka.

g. Sensei wa Nihonjin de nakereba narimasen ka.

h. Hon wa nakute mo ii desu ka.

4. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I do or did so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'I must or had to do so-and-so' and 'I don't or didn't have to do so-and-so':

a. Komban wa Nihongo o benkyoo-shimasu.

b. Asatte Tookyoo e ikimasu.

c. Taijin-jirai o fusetsu shimasu.

d. Fuban-shingoo o tsukaimasu.

e. Shikijo ni denwa o kakemashita.

f. Tomodachi ni ii mashita.

g. Kono hookoku o yomimasu.

h. Taisensha-jirai o jokyo-shimasu.

i. Jiraigen o keikai-shimashita.

j. Hashi o hakai-shimashita.

k. Sugu uchi e kaerimasu.

l. Isha ni denwa o kakemashita.

m. Kusuri o motte kimashita.

n. Teki no tsuushin o booju-shimashita.

o. Kono chi-iki o boogyo shimasu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

5. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I want to do so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'you need not do so-and-so':

   a. Sono hon ga kaitai desu.

   b. Kanai ni tegami ga kakitai desu.

   c. Nihongo de hanashitai desu.

   d. Shinitai desu.

   e. Ofuro ni hairitai desu.

   f. Daitai-choo ni renraku-shitai desu.

   g. Tsuushin-soshiki ni tsuite shiritai desu.

   h. Teki no tsuushin o boogai-shitai desu.

   i. Taisa ni naritai desu.

   j. Nani ka shitai desu.

   k. Moo okitai desu.

6. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'I don't want to do so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'you must do so-and-so':

   a. Bakuyaku wa tsukaitaku wa arimasen.

   b. Nihongo de kakitaku wa nai n desu.

   c. Sensei ni hookoku-shitaku wa arimasen.

   d. Go-ji ni okitaku wa nai n desu.

   e. Sooji-shitaku wa arimasen.

   f. Soko ni sumitaku wa nai n desu.

   g. Motte ikitaku wa arimasen.

   h. Okinawa e ikitaku wa arimasen.

   i. Gunjin ni naritaku wa arimasen.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

j. Tabetaku wa arimasen.

Lesson 35

A. Perception Drill.

1.	eisei	sanitation, hygiene
	eisei-tai	medical unit
	eisei-tai-in	medical troops, medical personnel
	kyuugo	relief
	kyuugo-in	aid man
a.	Eisei-tai-in wa kyuugo-in desu.	Medical troops are aid men.
	sentoo-butai	combat unit
b.	Eisei-tai-in wa sentoo-butai ni imasu.	Medical troops are in combat units.
	fushoo	wound
	fushoo-suru	is wounded, sustain injuries
	fushoo-hei or fushoo-in	the wounded (soldiers or personnel)
	teate	treatment, care
	teate o suru	give treatment, treat, care for
c.	Kyuugo-in wa fushoo-hei no teate o shimasu.	Aid men treat the wounded (soldiers).
d.	Donna teate o shimasu ka.	What sort of treatment do they give?
	kizu	wound, injury
	ookyuu	temporary, emergency
	ookyuu-teate	first aid, temporary treatment, emergency treatment

Lesson 35

A. Perception Drill, continued.

e.	Kizu no ookyuu-teate o shimasu.	They give first aid treatment of wounds.
2.	kega	injury
	kega o suru	sustain injuries, get hurt
	hootai	bandage
	hootai o suru or hootai-suru	dress, bandage (v.t.)
a.	Kega o shita toki ni wa, kizu o hootai-shimasu.	When I get wounded, I bandage the wound.
	shukketsu	bleeding
	shukketsu-suru	bleed (v.i.)
	kire	cloth
	chi	blood
	chi ga deru	bleed
	tomemasu	formal equivalent of tomeru 'stop' (v.t.)
b.	Shukketsu no toki ni wa kire ka nani ka de chi o tomemasu.	At the time of bleeding, I stop the blood with a cloth or something.
c.	Donna kire o tsukaimasu ka.	What sort of cloth do you use?
	seiketsu	clean (copula noun)
d.	Seiketsu na kire o tsukaimasu.	I use a clean cloth.
e.	Naze seiketsu na kire o tsukawanakereba narimasen ka.	Why must you use a a clean cloth?

Lesson 35

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	doku	poison
	baikin	germ
f.	Seiketsu na kire o tsukawanai to, doku ya baikin ga hairu ka mo shiremasen.	Unless you use a clean cloth, poisons and germs may get in.
	ki	mind
	ki o tsukeru	exercise care, is careful
g.	Fushoo-shita toki ni wa ki o tsukenakereba narimasen.	You must be careful when you get wounded.
3.	yu	hot water
	oyu	polite equivalent of yu 'hot water'
	wakasu	boil (v.t.)
	yu o wakasu	boil water, make hot water
	shoodoku	disinfection
	shoodoku-suru	disinfect (v.t.)
a.	Zensen de wa yu o wakashite kitanai mono o shoodoku-suru koto wa dekimasen.	You can't disinfect dirty things by making hot water in front lines.
	futsuu	normally, generally
	shoodoku-zai	disinfectant
b.	Kyuugo-in wa futsuu shoodoku-zai o motte imasen.	Aid men don't generally have disinfectants.

Lesson 35

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	dekireba	if possible
	byooin	hospital
	kyuukyuu	emergency relief (used in compound only)
	kyuukyuu-byooin	field hospital
c.	Dekireba ookyuu-teate o shite, hayaku kyuukyuu-byooin e koosoo-shimasu.	They give them emergency treatment if possible and quickly evacuate them to a field hospital.
	okureru	is delayed, is late, get behind (v.i.)
	abunai	dangerous (I-adj.)
d.	Teate ga okureru to abunai desu.	It's dangerous if the treatment is delayed.
	tama	bullet
	tama no naka	in a shower of bullets
	osoreru	is scared, is afraid, is fearful
	osorezu ni	without being scared, fearlessly
e.	Kyuugo-in wa tama no naka de mo osorezu ni fushoo-hei o byooin e koosoo-shinakereba narimasen.	Aid men must evacuate the wounded to a hospital fearlessly even in a shower of bullets.
	okureru	is delayed, is late, get behind (v.i.)
	okuretara	if it's delayed
	teate ga okuretara	if the treatment is delayed

A. Perception Drill, continued.

shinde	TE form of shinu 'die' (v.i.)
shinde shimau	die (and it will be too late to do anything about it)
f. Teate ga okuretara, shinde shimau ka mo shiremasen.	If the treatment is delayed, he may die (completely).

Lesson 35

B. Dialogue.

Medical Troops

1. A: Futsuu eisei-tai-in to iu no wa donna hei desu ka.

B: Eisei-tai-in to iu no wa kyuugo-in de, sentoo-butai ni ite, zensen de fushoo-hei no teate o shimasu.

2. A: Donna teate desu ka.

B: Ookyuu-teate desu. Fushoo-sha no kizu o hootai-shitari, shukketsu o tometari shite kyuukyuu-byooin e koosoo-shimasu.

3. A: Hei wa fushoo-shitari, kega o shitari shita toki ni wa, jibun de teate o shimasen ka.

B: Dekireba kire ka nani ka de chi o tomemasu ga, sono toki ni seiketsu na mono o tsukawanai to, doku ya baikin ga hairu ka mo shiremasen.

4. A: Zensen de wa oyu o wakashite kitanai mono o shoodoku-suru koto wa dekinai kara, baikin nado ga aru deshoo ne.

B: Soo desu. Desu kara hijoo ni ki o tsukenakereba narimasen.

5. A: Kyuugo-in wa shoodoku-zai o motte imasu ka.

B: Motte imasen. Fushoo-sha o sugu byooin ni koosoo-suru n desu kara.

6. A: Fushoo-sha no teate ga okureru to, abunai kara, ookyuu-teate dake shite, hayaku koosoo-suru no desu ne.

B: Soo desu. Hayaku isha no tokoro ni tsurete ikanakereba naranai n desu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Hayaku isha no tokoro ni tsurete ikanakattara, shinde shimau ka mo shiremasen.

B: Soo desu. Sore desu kara, kyuugo-in wa tama no naka de mo osorezu ni kizu no teate o shite, sugu byooin ni koosoo-shimasu.

8. A: Sore ja, kyuugo-in no shigoto wa abunai desu ne.

B: Soo desu. Hijoo ni abunai shigoto desu.

Lesson 35

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What sort of men are those generally called medical troops?

   B: Medical troops are aid men. And they are in combat units and treat the wounded (soldiers) in front lines.

2. A: What sort of treatment?

   B: First aid treatment. They bandage wounds of the wounded, stop their bleeding, and so on, and evacuate them to a field hospital.

3. A: Don't soldiers treat themselves when they get wounded or hurt?

   B: If possible they stop the bleeding with a cloth or something. But unless they use clean things, poisons and germs may get in.

4. A: They can't disinfect dirty things by making hot water in front lines, so germs and the like sometimes get in, don't they?

   B: That's right. So they have to be very careful.

5. A: Do aid men have disinfectants?

   B: They don't because they immediately evacuate the wounded to a hospital.

6. A: It's dangerous if the treatment of the wounded is delayed, so they just give emergency treatment and evacuate them quickly, don't they?

   B: That's right. They must take them to a doctor quickly.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

7. A: If they don't take them to a doctor quickly, they may die.

   B: That's right. So aid men treat the wounds without being scared even in a shower of bullets and immediately evacuate them to a hospital.

8. A: Then, the work of aid men is dangerous, isn't it?

   B: That's right. It's a very dangerous job.

Lesson 35

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Informal past plus toki ni.

As was described previously, toki ni means 'at the time, when'. The noun toki 'time' is modified by the informal past form of inflected words when the action in the main clause takes place or will take place only after the action in the adjectival clause is completed.

Compare:

Kega o shimasu.

'I get hurt.'

Isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'I go to a doctor.'

Kega o shita toki ni wa, isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'When I get hurt, I go to a doctor.'

Tookyoo e ikimasu.

'I go to Tokyo.'

Kaimasu.

'I buy it.'

Tookyoo e itta toki ni, kaimasu.

'I'll buy it when I go to Tokyo.'

Byooki ni narimasu.

'I become sick.'

Hayaku teate o ukemasu.

'I receive treatment early.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Byooki ni natta toki ni wa, hayaku teate o ukemasu.

'When I become sick, I receive treatment early.'

2. Non-past -nai form plus to 'unless'.

The use of the particle to 'if, when' occurring after the informal non-past form has already been introduced.

The phrase 'non-past -nai form plus to' means 'if one doesn't do so-and-so'. Thus its meaning is equivalent to 'unless one does so-and-so'.

Examples:

Hayaku kawanai to, takaku narimasu yo.

'Unless you buy it early, it'll become expensive, you know.'

Seiketsu na mono o tsukawanai to, baikin ga hairimasu yo.

'Unless you use clean things, germs will get in, you know.'

Ki o tsukenai to, abunai desu yo.

'It's dangerous unless you are careful, I'm warning you.'

3. ka mo shiremasen 'maybe'.

Shiremasen or its informal equivalent shirenai means 'can't be known'. Occurring after the informal non-

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

past or past form of verbs and I-adjectives and after a noun or datta 'was', ka mo shiremasen means 'maybe, it may be that, perhaps'.

Examples:

Iku ka mo shiremasen.
'Maybe he'll go.'
Itta ka mo shiremasen.
'Maybe he went.'
or
'Maybe he's gone.'

Taberu ka mo shiremasen.
'Maybe he'll eat.'
Tabeta ka mo shiremasen.
'Maybe he ate.'
or
'Maybe he has eaten.'

Shinai ka mo shiremasen.
'Maybe he won't do it.'
Shinakatta ka mo shiremasen.
'Maybe he didn't do it.'

Samui ka mo shiremasen.
'It may be cold.'
Samukatta ka mo shiremasen.
'It may have been cold.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Ano hito wa gunjin ka mo shiremasen.
'He may be a soldier.'

Ano hito wa gunjin datta ka mo shiremasen.
'He may have been a soldier.'

Sometimes wakarimasen or its informal equivalent wakaranai 'can't tell, can't understand' is used in place of shiremasen, e.g.,

Iku ka mo wakarimasen.
'Maybe he'll go.'

4. -zu 'without (doing)'.

-Zu is a suffix with the meaning 'not'. It is suffixed to the stem of the -nai form. The -zu form may be followed by the particle ni. The meaning of the -zu form or the -zu form plus ni is equivalent to 'without doing so-and-so'.

Examples:

Nanni mo kawazu ni kaerimashita.
'I went back without buying anything.'
Asahan o tabezu ni kimashita.
'I came without eating breakfast.'

Tama no naka de mo osorezu ni fushoo-hei o koosoo-shimasu.

'They evacuate the wounded fearlessly even in a shower of bullets.'

There is one exception to the above formation of the -zu form. The -zu form of shinai 'don't do' is sezu, e.g.,

Benkyoo-sezu ni gakkoo e ikimashita.

'I went to school without studying.'

5. TE form of verbs plus shimau.

Occurring after the TE form of verbs, the verb shimau means 'do so-and-so completely', 'finish doing so-and-so', or 'end up by doing so-and-so'. It is also used to imply that the action expressed by the TE form of the verb which precedes it will bring about a new state or form which cannot be restored to the original state or form.

Examples:

Ano hon wa sugu yonde shimaimasu.

'I'll finish reading that book soon.'

Kodomo-tachi wa nete shimaimashita.

'The children fell asleep.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Are wa minna tabete shimaimashita.

'I finished eating all of that.'

Seito-tachi wa kaette shimaimashita.

'The students have gone home.'

Ano hito wa shinde shimaimashita.

'He died.'

Baikin ga haitte shimaimashita.

'Germs got in.'

Saifu o otoshite shimaimashita.

'I lost my wallet.'
(Lit: I dropped my wallet.)

6. The conditional -tara (or -dara).

Verbs, I-adjectives and the copula da have conditional forms, meaning 'if or when so-and-so happens or happened' or 'if so-and-so is or was'. The tense of the conditional form is governed by the tense indicated by the form of the inflected word that ends the main clause. Thus the dependent clause ending with a conditional expresses the condition under which something else happens (or happened) or is (or was) true.

The conditional of any inflected word is formed by adding -ra to its past form, e.g.,

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Basic form		Past form	Conditional form	
kaku	'write'	kaita	kaitara	'if or when someone writes or wrote'
yomu	'read'	yonda	yondara	'if or when someone reads or read'
taberu	'eat'	tabeta	tabetara	'if or when someone eats or ate'
miru	'see'	mita	mitara	'if or when someone sees or saw'
suru	'do'	shita	shitara	'if or when someone does or did'
kuru	'come'	kita	kitara	'if or when someone comes or came'
nai	'is not, don't have'	nakatta	nakattara	'if something isn't or wasn't' or 'if someone doesn't have or didn't have'
ikanai	'don't go'	ikanakatta	ikanakattara	'if someone doesn't go or didn't go'
kaitai	'want to buy'	kaitakatta	kaitakattara	'if someone wants to buy or wanted to buy'
samui	'is cold'	samukatta	samukattara	'if it is cold or was cold'
(sensei) da	'is a teacher'	(sensei) datta	(sensei) dattara	'if it is or was (a teacher)'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The following three different ways to express the meaning 'when' have been introduced:

(1) The informal non-past or past plus toki ni.

Nihongo de hanasu toki ni wa, yoku wakarimasu.

'When I speak in Japanese, he understands me well.'

Atsui toki ni wa, mado o akemasu.

'When it's hot, I open the window.'

Byooki no toki ni wa, isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'When I'm sick, I go to a doctor.'

(2) The informal non-past plus to.

Nihongo de hanasu to, yoku wakarimasu.

'Whenever I speak in Japanese, he understands me well.'

Atsui to, mado o akemasu.

'Whenever it's hot, I open the window.'

Byooki da to, isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'Whenever I'm sick, I go to a doctor.'

(3) The conditional (or -tara or -dara form).

Nihongo de hanashitara, yoku wakarimasu.

'When I speak in Japanese, he understands me well.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Atsukattara, mado o akemasu.

'When it's hot, I open the window.'

Byooki dattara, isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'When I'm sick, I go to a doctor.'

The construction ending with toki ni emphasizes the time when something happens or is true.

The informal non-past plus to states a general condition under which something happens habitually or repeatedly.

The conditional or -tara or -dara form states the condition under which something just happens.

There are several ways to express the meaning 'if' in Japanese. The following two possibilities have already been introduced:

(1) The informal non-past plus to.

Nihongo de hanasu to, yoku wakarimasu.

'If I speak in Japanese, he understands me well.'

Atsui to, mado o akemasu.

'If it's hot, I open the window.'

Byooki da to, isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'If I'm sick, I go to a doctor.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

(2) The conditional (*or* *-tara* or *-dara* form).

Nihongo de *hanashitara*, yoku wakarimasu.

'If I should speak in Japanese, he'd understand me well.'

Atsukattara, mado o akemasu.

'If it's hot, I'd open the window.'

Byooki *dattara*, isha no tokoro e ikimasu.

'If I was sick, I'd go to a doctor.'

The difference between the informal non-past plus *to* and the conditional *-tara* or *-dara* form is that the former states a general condition under which something occurs habitually or repeatedly and the latter states the somewhat doubtful condition under which something would occur.

There is another way to express the meaning 'if'. If the condition under which something will occur is hypothetical as in *dekireba* 'if it's possible', the *-ba* form is used. This form will be described further later in the course.

However, to express a hypothetical condition in the past, the conditional *-tara* or *-dara* form is usually used, and the main clause often ends with the informal past form plus *desu* or *deshoo*, e.g.,

Uchi ni itara, yokatta desu ga.

'If I had stayed home, it would have been all right.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Chitto mo benkyoo-shinakattara, nanni mo wakaranakatta deshoo.

'If I hadn't studied at all, I wouldn't have understood anything.'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Tell your friend that you'd do it under the following condition:

   a. the weather is good.

   b. you are healthy.

   c. he stays here.

   d. you have a car.

   e. he comes.

   f. it's not difficult.

   g. it's necessary.

   h. you have the time.

   i. you have nothing else to do.

   j. you have a lot of money.

2. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'whenever something happens, something else habitually occurs' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'when something happens, something just happens', using the conditional -tara or -dara form:

   a. Kega o suru to, hootai o shimasu.

   b. Kusuri o nomu to, naorimasu.

   c. Hootai-suru to, shukketsu ga tomarimasu.

   d. Hana ga saku to, mi ni ikimasu.

   e. Ame ga furu to, ikimasen.

   f. Teate ga okureru to, abunai desu.

   g. Ki o tsukenai to, kega o shimasu.

   h. Nihongo de iu to, sugu wakarimasu.

   i. Takusan taberu to, byooki ni narimasu.

7

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

j. Hei ga fushoo-suru to, sugu byooin e koosoo-shimasu.

3. Tell your friend that you'll do it when (or after) the following condition is met:

   a. you make hot water.

   b. you eat supper.

   c. you write a letter to Mr. Tanaka.

   d. you wash your car.

   e. you read a letter from Mr. Yamada.

4. Give an appropriate answer for each of the following questions:

   a. Byooki ni natta toki ni wa doo shimasu ka.

   b. Kaze o hiita toki ni wa nani o nomimasu ka.

   c. Asa okita toki ni nani o shimasu ka.

   d. Zensen de hei ga fushoo-shita toki ni wa eisei-tai-in wa doo shimasu ka.

   e. Kega o shita toki ni wa doo shite chi o tomemasu ka.

5. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. I came to school without having breakfast.

   b. I went to school without books.

   c. Aid men evacuated the wounded without giving them the emergency treatment.

   d. He bandaged the wound without using any disinfectant.

   e. I go to school without being tardy everyday.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

6. Making whatever changes are necessary, change each of the following sentences to the corresponding 'maybe' sentence:

   a. Baikin ga hairimashita.

   b. Tanaka-san wa moo okite imasu.

   c. Kaze o hikimashita.

   d. Ano hito wa Eigo ga wakarimasen.

   e. Okinawa no hoo ga ii desu.

   f. Okane ga arimasen deshita.

   g. Yamada-san wa isha deshita.

   h. Hanako-san wa kirei deshita.

   i. Ano hito wa Nihonjin desu.

   j. Kore wa doku desu.

7. Making whatever changes are necessary, change each of the following conclusions to the corresponding sentence meaning 'so-and-so ended up by doing so-and-so' or 'so-and-so finished doing so-and-so':

   a. Tabetaku wa nai to itte imashita ga, minna tabemashita.

   b. Kekkon-shitaku wa nai to itte imashita ga, kekkon-shimashita.

   c. Jikan ga nai kara yomu koto ga dekinai to itte imashita ga, sugu yomimashita.

   d. Isogashii kara tegami o kaku jikan ga nai to itte imashita ga, kakimashita.

   e. Shoodoku-shinakute mo ii to itte imashita ga, shoodoku-shimashita.

   f. Kodomo-tachi wa terebi o mite imashita ga, nemashita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

g. Fushoo-sha wa isha no teate o ukemashita ga, shinimashita.

h. Ki o tsukete shimashita ga, kega o shimashita.

i. Seiketsu na kire o tsukaimashita ga, doku ga hairimashita.

j. Kaette wa naranai to iimashita ga, kaerimashita.

Lesson 36

A. Perception Drill.

1.		hako	box
		akeru	open (v.t.)
		akete arimasu	is open
	a.	Hako wa akete arimasu ka.	Is the box open?
	b.	Iie, akete wa arimasen.	No, it's not open.
		kaku	write (v.t.)
		kaite aru	is written
	c.	Hako ni wa nan to kaite arimasu ka.	What does the box say? (Lit: What's written on the box?)
		kiken	danger (copula noun)
	d.	Kiken to kaite arimasu.	It says "danger". (Lit: "Danger" is written.)
	e.	Hako ni wa nani ga haitte imasu ka.	What's in the box?
		shoojuu	rifle
		shoojuu-dan	rifle bullet
	f.	Shoojuu-dan ga haitte imasu.	Rifle bullets are in it.
2.		dan-yaku	ammunition
		koofu-suru	issue (v.t.)
	a.	Dan-yaku wa doko de koofu-shimasu ka.	Where do they issue ammunitions?
		shuuseki	accumulation, collection

Lesson 36

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	shuusekijo	dump, depot
	dan-yaku-shuusekijo	ammunition dump
b.	Dan-yaku-shuusekijo de koofu-shimasu.	They issue at an ammunition dump.
	hakonde	TE form of hakobu 'transport, carry' (v.t.)
c.	Dan-yaku wa nan de hakonde kimasu ka.	What do they transport the ammunitions by?
	juutai	column
	jidoosha-juutai	truck convoy
	kamotsu	freight
	ressha	trains
	kamotsu-ressha	freight trains
d.	Jidoosha-juutai ya kamotsu-ressha de hakonde kimasu.	They bring by truck convoys and freight trains.
	torakku	truck
	kuuchuu	aerial
	tooka-suru	drop (v.t.) (materiel only)
	kuuchuu-tooka-suru	air drop (v.t.)
e.	Torakku ya kisha no ikanai tokoro ni wa kuuchuu-tooka-shimasu.	They air drop in places where trucks and trains do not go.
	tooka-chiiki	drop zone
	saki ni	in advance
f.	Tooka-chiiki ni tsuite wa saki ni renraku-shite okimasu.	They establish liaison in advance regarding the drop zone.

Lesson 36

A. Perception Drill, continued.

3.	ni yotte wa	depending on
	toki ni yotte wa	depending on the time
	tokoro ni yotte wa	depending on the place
	rikujoo-butai	ground unit
	iro-iro to	in various ways
	kyooryoku	cooperation
	kyooryoku-suru	cooperate (v.i.)
a.	Tokoro ni yotte wa kaigun ga rikujoo-butai ni iro-iro to kyooryoku-suru koto ga arimasu.	Depending on the place, the Navy sometimes cooperates with ground units in various ways.
b.	Donna tokoro desu ka.	What sort of places?
	kaigan	shore, coast
	sanchi	mountainous area
c.	Kaigan no chikaku no sanchi nado desu.	Such places as mountainous area near shores.
	minato	harbor, port
	komaru	is in trouble (v.i.)
d.	Minato ga nakattara, komaru desho?	If there were no harbor, it'd be troublesome, wouldn't it?
	fune	boat
	rikuage-suru	land (v.t.)
	kuuyu-suru	air land (v.t.)

Lesson 36

A. Perception Drill, continued.

e.	Chiisai fune de rikuage-shitari, kuuyu-shitari suru koto ga dekimasu.	It can land by means of small boats or air land them.
4.	hokyuu	supply
	hokyuu-suru	replenish, supply (v.t.)
	hokyuu-hin	supplies
	bakari	only, just
a.	Hokyuu-hin wa dan-yaku bakari ja arimasen.	Supplies aren't limited to ammunitions. (Lit: Supplies are not ammunitions only.)
	ryooshoku	ration
	nichiyoo-hin	daily necessities
b.	Ryooshoku, hifuku, nichiyoo-hin nado mo haitte imasu.	They include rations, clothes and daily necessities.
5.	haibun	distribution
	haibun-suru	distribute (v.t.)
	nai	there is not (I-adj.)
	nakute wa	if there is not
	sensoo	war
	sensoo-suru	wage war, fight (v.i.)
a.	Hokyuu-hin no haibun ga nakute wa, sensoo dekimasen.	You can't fight if you have no distribution of supplies.
	yowai	weak (I-adj.)
	tsuyoi	strong (I-adj.)

Lesson 36

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	tsuyokute mo	even if you are strong
	ikura tsuyokute mo	however strong you are, no matter how strong you are
	ikura takakute mo	however expensive it is
	ikura samukute mo	however cold it is
	onaka	stomach
	suku	become empty (v.i.)
	onaka ga suku	become hungry
	onaka ga suite iru	is hungry
b.	Ikura tsuyokute mo, onaka ga suite ite wa, sentoo dekimasen.	No matter how strong you are, if you are hungry, you can't fight.
	shiki	morale
	sagaru	fall, go down (v.i.)
c.	Ryooshoku ga nakute wa, shiki ga sagarimasu.	If you don't have rations, your morale will go down.

Lesson 36

B. Dialogue.

Supply.

1. A: Sono hako ni nan to kaite arimasu ka.

   B: Kiken to kaite arimasu.

2. A: Naka ni nani ga haitte imasu ka.

   B: Shoojuu-dan ga haitte imasu.

3. A: Koko wa nan desu ka.

   B: Dan-yaku-shuusekijo desu.

4. A: Dan-yaku wa koko de kaku-butai ni koofu-suru no desu ka.

   B: Soo desu. Kaku-butai wa jidoosha-juutai ya kamotsu-ressha de hakonde kita dan-yaku o tori ni kimasu.

5. A: Kaku-butai wa moratta dan-yaku o doo shite haibun-shimasu ka.

   B: Torakku de haibun-shimasu.

6. A: Torakku no ikanai yama no naka nado no yoo na tokoro ni wa, doo shite dan-yaku no hokyuu o shimasu ka.

   B: Hikooki ya herikoputaa nado o tsukatte, kuuchuu-tooka-shimasu. Mochiron, tooka-chiiki ni tsuite wa saki ni renraku-shite okimasu.

7. A: Sore de wa, kuugun ga rikujoo-butai ni kyooryoku-suru no desu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Toki ni yotte wa, kaigun ga kyooryoku-suru koto mo arimasu. Kaigan no chikaku no sanchi de wa, kaigun ga iro-iro to kyooryoku-shimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

8. A: Demo, minato ga nakattara, komaru deshoo?

B: Ammari komarimasen. Chiisai fune o tsukatte rikuage-suru koto mo dekiru shi, kuuyu-suru koto mo dekimasu kara.

9. A: Hokyuu-hin wa dan-yaku bakari ja arimasen ne.

B: Mochiron. Dan-yaku ga atte mo, ryooshoku, hifuku, toki ni wa hoka no nichiyoo-hin ga nakute wa, sentoo dekimasen.

10. A: Soo desu ne. Ikura tsuyokute mo, onaka ga suite ite wa, sensoo dekimasen ne.

B: Soo desu. Ryooshoku ga nakute wa shiki ga sagatte, yowaku natte shimaimasu.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What does the box say?
(Lit: What's written on that box?)

B: It says "danger".

2. A: What's in it?

B: Rifle bullets are in it.

3. A: What is this place?

B: An ammunition dump.

4. A: Do they issue ammunitions to each unit here?

B: That's right. Each unit comes here to get ammunitions which were brought by truck convoys and freight trains.

5. A: How does each unit distribute the ammunitions it received?

B: It distributes them by means of trucks.

6. A: How does it supply the ammunitions to such places as the heart of the mountains where trucks don't go?

B: It uses airplanes and helicopters and air drops them. Of course, it establishes liaison in advance regarding the drop zone.

7. A: Then, the Air Force cooperates with ground units, doesn't it?

B: That's right. Depending on the occasion, the Navy sometimes cooperates, too. In mountainous areas near shores, the Navy cooperates in various ways.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

8. A: But, if there were no harbor, it'd be troublesome, wouldn't it?

B: It won't be troublesome. Because it can be landed by using small boats, and also it can be air landed.

9. A: Supplies aren't limited to ammunitions, are they?

B: Of course. Even if you have ammunitions, if you don't have rations, clothes and sometimes other daily necessities, you can't fight.

10. A: That's right. No matter how strong you are, if you are hungry, you can't fight, can you?

B: That's right. If you don't have rations, your morale will go down and you'll become weak.

Lesson 36

D. Grammar Notes.

1. TE form of transitive verbs plus arimasu.

The use of the TE form of intransitive verbs plus iru to mean either 'an action is now taking place' or 'the state resulting from an action now exists' has already been introduced, e.g.,

Seito ga aruite imasu.
'A student is walking.'
Buraun-san wa Nihon ni itte imasu.
'Mr. Brown is in Japan.'

As was described previously, the TE form of transitive verbs plus iru also means 'an action is now taking place', e.g.,

Ima yuuhan o tabete imasu.
'I'm having supper now.'

However, the TE form of transitive verbs also occurs in front of aru with the meaning 'the state resulting from an action now exists'.

The object of the transitive verb in this construction is usually changed to the subject and the particle ga, wa or mo instead of o occurs after it. Compare:

Kono hon ni watakushi no namae o kakimashita.
'I wrote my name on this book.'

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

Kono hon ni watakushi no namae *ga* *kaite arimasu*.

'My name is written on this book.'

Anata no namae mo kaite arimasu.

'Your name is also written.'

Tanaka-san no namae *wa* *kaite* *arimasen*.

'Mr. Tanaka's name is not written.'

Shatsu *o* araimashita.

'I washed my shirts.'

Shatsu *wa* *aratte* arimasu.

'Shirts are washed.'

Mado *o* akemashita.

'I opened the window.'

Mado *ga* *akete* *arimasu*.

'The window is (left) open.'

2. --- *ni yotte* 'depending on --- '.

Yotte is the TE form of the verb *yoru* 'depend on'. The phrase *ni yotte* occurs after nouns with the meaning 'depending on'.

Examples:

Tokoro *ni yotte* wa, taihen fuben desu.

'Depending on the place, it's very inconvenient.'

Hito ni yotte wa, wakaranai ka mo shiremasen.

'Depending on the person, it may not be understood.'

Toki ni yotte wa, kuugun ga kyooryoku-shimasu.

'Depending on the occasion, the Air Force cooperates.'

3. bakari.

Occuring after nouns, the particle bakari means 'only, just, nothing but' and it usually replaces the particles o and ga.

Compare:

Tegami o kaite imasu.

'He's writing letters.'

Tegami bakari kaite imasu.

'He's writing nothing but letters.'

or

'He's always writing letters.'

Nihonjin ga kimashita.

'The Japanese came.'

Nihonjin bakari kimashita.

'Only the Japanese came.'

4. TE form plus wa 'if --- '.

Occurring after the TE form of verbs and I-adjectives and after de of the copula da 'is', the particle wa expresses a conditional 'if'.

Examples:

Konna ni ame ga futte wa, doko e mo ikitaku wa arimasen.

'If it rains this much, I don't want to go anywhere.'

Okane ga nakute wa nanni mo kau koto ga dekimasen.

'If I have no money, I can't buy anything.'

Kodomo de wa, dame desu.

'A child won't do.'
or
'If it's a child, it won't do.'

The phrase -te wa and -de wa or de wa are often contracted to -cha and -ja or ja respectively in conversational speech.

Compare:

Sonna koto o shite wa, karada ni warui desu yo.

Sonna koto o shicha, karada ni warui desu yo.

'If you do such a thing, it'll be bad for the health, you know.'

Konna warui hi ni hikooki de tonde wa, abunai desu yo.

Konna warui hi ni hikooki de tonja, abunai desu yo.

'If you fly by airplaine on such a bad days as this, it'll be dangerous, I'm warning you.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Byooki de wa, nanni mo dekimasen ne.

Byooki ja, nanni mo dekimasen ne.

'If you are sick, you can't do anything, can you?'

Note that all of the following sentences mean 'I must go':

Ikanakereba narimasen.
Ikanakute wa narimasen.
Ikanakucha narimasen.
Ikanakereba ikemasen.
Ikanakute wa ikemasen.
Ikanakucha ikemasen.
Ikanakereba warui desu.
Ikanakute wa warui desu.
Ikanakucha warui desu.

5. TE form plus mo 'even if --- '.

Occurring after the TE form of verbs and I-adjectives and after de of the copula da, the particle mo means 'even if'.

Examples:

Tatte mo, yoku miru koto ga dekimasen.

'Even if I stand up, I (still) can't see it well.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Okane ga nakute mo, kaitai desu.

'Even if I have no money, I (still) want to buy it.'

Kodomo de mo, dekimasu.

'Even a child can do it.'
or
'Even if he is a child, he can do it.'

The TE form plus mo is often followed by ii or yoroshii or kamaimasen to construct a pattern for granting permission 'may'.

Examples:

Kaette mo ii desu.

Kaette mo yoroshii desu.

Kaette mo kamaimasen.

'You may go home.'

Tabete mo ii desu.

Tabete mo yoroshii desu.

Tabete mo kamaimasen.

'You may eat.'

Chiisakute mo ii desu.

Chiisakute mo yoroshii desu.

Chiisakute mo kamaimasen.

'A small one will do.'
or
'Even if it's small, it's (still) all right.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Empitsu *de mo* *ii* desu.

Empitsu *de mo* *yoroshii* desu.

Empitsu *de mo* *kamaimasen*.

'A pencil will do.'
or
'Even if it's a pencil, it's (still) all right.'

The negative TE form plus *mo* plus *ii*, *yoroshii* or *kamaimasen* is a pattern for granting permission *not* to do so-and-so.

Compare:

Yamada-san ni tegami o *kakanakute mo* *ii* desu ka.

'Is it all right even if I don't write to Mr. Yamada?'

Hai, *kakanakute mo* *ii* desu.

'Yes, it's all right even if you don't write.'
or
('No, you don't have to write.')

Iie, kakanakereba narimasen.
or
Iie, kakanakute wa narimasen.

'No, you must write.'

Nagaku *nakute mo* *ii* desu ka.

'Is it all right even if it isn't long?'

Hai, nagaku *nakute mo* *ii* desu.

'Yes, it's all right even if it isn't long.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Iie, nagaku nakereba ikemasen.
or
Iie, nagaku nakute wa ikemasen.

'No, it has to be long.'

Okane wa nakute mo ii desu ka.

'Is it all right even if I don't have any money?'

Hai, nakute mo ii desu.

'Yes, it's all right even if you don't have any.'

Iie, nakute wa ikemasen.

'No, you must have some.'

Iie, okane ga irimasu.

'No, you need some money.'

Amerikajin de nakute mo ii desu ka.

'Is it all right even if it isn't an American?'

Hai, Amerikajin de nakute mo ii desu.

'Yes, it's all right even if it isn't an American.'

Iie, Amerikajin de nakute wa dame desu.

'No, it has to be an American.'

6. Question word plus TE form plus mo.

When used before the TE form plus mo, a question word or a phrase containing a question word means 'in whatever manner, way, or degree'; 'by whatever means or

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

to whatever extent'; 'however'; or 'no matter'.

Examples:

Ikura _itte mo_, wakarimasen.

'No matter how much I tell him, he (still) doesn't understand.'

Nani o _shite mo_, yoku shimasu.

'No matter what he does, he does it well.'

Dare ni _tazunete mo_, wakarimasen deshita.

'No matter whom I asked, I couldn't find out.'

Doko e _itte mo_, kirei desu.

'No matter where you go, it's beautiful.'

Itsu _mite mo_, kirei desu.

'No matter when you see, it's pretty.'

Ikura _tsuyokute mo_, ryooshoku ga nakute wa, sentoo dekimasen.

'No matter how strong they are, they can't fight if they have no rations.'

Ikura _takakute mo_, kaitai desu.

'No matter how expensive it is, I (still) want to buy it.'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Tell your maid that:

   a. all the windows are left open.

   b. the things I want to buy are written on a piece of paper.

   c. the children have been told about today's lunch.

   d. the money is placed on the table in the kitchen.

   e. hot water is already made.

   f. the children are up already.

   g. the windows are dirty.

2. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'someone did or has done so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'the state resulting from the action now exists':

   a. Kodomo-tachi wa nemashita.

   b. Onaka ga sukimashita.

   c. Tanaka-san wa Amerika ni kimashita.

   d. Sensei wa kyooshitsu ni hairimashita.

   e. Taroo wa gakkoo ni ikimashita.

   f. Kokuban ni Nihongo o kakimashita.

   g. Kutsushita o araimashita.

   h. Daidokoro o sooji-shimashita.

   i. Tegami o dashimashita.

   j. Yamada-san ni hanashimashita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

3. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions:

   a. Ashita wa gakkoo ni ikanakute mo ii desu ka.

   b. Furo ni hairanakute mo ii desu ka.

   c. Do-yoobi ni wa hatarakanakute mo ii desu ka.

   d. Kuuyu-shinakute mo ii desu ka.

   e. Rikuage-shinakute mo ii desu ka.

   f. Ryooshoku o morawanakute mo ii desu ka.

   g. Hokyuu-hin o koofu-shinakute mo ii desu ka.

   h. Kiken na tokoro ni wa dan-yaku o haibun-shinakute mo ii desu ka.

   i. Nichiyoo-hin wa kawanakute mo ii desu ka.

   j. Hifuku wa nakute mo ii desu ka.

   k. Jidoosha-juutai de nakute mo ii desu ka.

   l. Kamotsu-ressha de nakute mo ii desu ka.

   m. Dan-yaku-shuusekijo wa nakute mo ii desu ka.

4. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions:

   a. Kuuchuu-tooka-shite mo ii desu ka.

   b. Dan-yaku o tori ni itte mo ii desu ka.

   c. Shiki ga sagatte mo ii desu ka.

   d. Okurete mo ii desu ka.

   e. Hootai-shite mo ii desu ka.

   f. Kyooryoku-shite mo ii desu ka.

   g. Chiisakute mo ii desu ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

h. Mijikakute mo ii desu ka.

i. Kono shoodoku-zai de mo ii desu ka.

j. Kono hako de mo ii desu ka.

5. Tell your friend that you must go:

a. no matter how busy you are.

b. no matter how cold it is.

c. no matter how far it is.

d. no matter how dark it is.

e. no matter how sick you are.

f. no matter how inconvenient it is.

g. no matter how dangerous it is.

h. no matter who comes.

i. no matter how much it snows.

j. no matter how much you are in trouble.

Lesson 37

A. Perception Drill.

1.	kuutei	airborne
	kuutei-butai	airborne unit
	rakkasan	parachute
	rakkasan-butai	parachute troops
a.	Kono chuutonchi niwa kuutei-butai shika imasen ka.	Are there only airborne units in this camp?
b.	Hai, soo desu. Kuutei-butai shika imasen.	Yes, that's right. There are only airborne units.
c.	Iie, kuutei-butai dake de wa arimasen. Hohei mo imasu.	No, they are not only airborne units. There is infantry, too.
d.	Soko ni wa Tanaka-san shika imasen ka.	Is Mr. Tanaka the only one there?
e.	Iie, Tanaka-san bakari de naku, Yamada-san mo imasu.	No, not only Mr. Tanaka, but also Mr. Yamada is there.
2.	sakusen	operation
	sakusen-suru	plan an operation, carry out an operation (v.i.)
	kuutei-sakusen	airborne operations
	kooka	descent, drop (troop)
	kooka-suru	descend, drop (v.i.)
	chiiki	zone, district, area
	kooka-chiiki	drop zone (troops only)

Lesson 37

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	shiraberu	informal equivalent of shirabemasu investigate (v.t.)
a.	Kuutei-sakusen no mae ni kooka-chiiki o shirabemasu ka.	Do they investigate the drop zone before airborne operations?
	chikei	shape of land, terrain
	chibutsu	things on ground, planimeteric features
	chikei-chibutsu	terrain features
	tenkoo	weather
	hazu	supposed to, expected to
b.	Soo desu. Kooka-chiiki no chikei-chibutsu o shiraberu hazu desu.	Yes, they do. They are supposed to investigate the terrain features of the drop zone.
c.	Gun wa soko ni sakusen-suru hazu desu.	The army is to plan an operation there.
d.	Kyoo wa dare mo konai hazu desu.	Nobody is expected to come today.
e.	Nichi-yoobi niwa hataraka-nai hazu desu.	They are not expected to work on Sundays.
f.	Ashita wa ame no hazu desu.	It is expected to rain tomorrow.
g.	Koko wa anzen na hazu desu.	This place is supposed to be safe.
h.	Shikago wa mushiatsui hazu desu.	Chicago is supposed to be sultry.

Lesson 37

A. Perception Drill, continued.

i.	Hiroshima wa, fuyu demo samuku wa nai hazu desu.	Hiroshima is not expected to be cold even in winter.
3.	hayashi	forest, woods
	ki	tree
	kiri	fog
	numa	pond, marsh, swamp
	numachi	bog, moor, marsh, swamp
	chijoo	ground surface, on the gound
	kaette	on the contrary, rather
	anzen	safe (copula noun)
a.	Hayashi no naka ga, kaette anzen kamo shiremasen.	On the contrary, it may be safe in the forest.
b.	Hai, soo kamo shiremasen.	Yes, it may be so. or Maybe.
c.	Anzen ja nai kamo shiremasen.	It may not be safe.
d.	Kore wa taisetsu kamo shiremasen.	This may be important.
4.	fuku	informal equivalent of fuku 'blow' (v.t. or v.i.)
	fuite	TE form of fuku
	chigau	is wrong, is different (v.i.)
	chigaimasu	MASU form of chigau

Lesson 37

A. Perception Drill, continued.

chigatte	TE form of chigau
chigattari	-tari form of chigau
tobu	fly, jump (v.i.)
tobimasu	MASU form of tobu
tonde	TE form of tobu
oriru	get down, get off, come down (v.i.)
orimasu	MASU form of oriru
oritari	-tari form of oriru
tobioriru	jump down, jump off (v.i.)
shikata ga nai	can't be helped (informal)
shikata ga arimasen	formal equivalent of shikata ga nai
senryoo	occupation
senryoo-suru	occupy, capture (v.t.)
kangaeru	think over, reflect on, consider (v.t.)
kangaemasu	MASU form of kangaeru
kangaete	TE form of kangaeru
a. Kaze ga tsuyoku fuku kamo shiremasen.	The wind may blow hard.
b. Sore wa chigatte iru kamo shiremasen.	It may be wrong.
sakusen-joo	from the standpoint of operations

Lesson 37

A. Perception Drill, continued.

c.	Soko wa sakusen-joo taisetsu desu kara, senryoo-suru kamo shiremasen.	Because that place is important from the standpoint of operations, we may occupy it.
	shikai	field of view, visibility
d.	Shikai ga semai kamo shiremasen ga, shikata ga nai desu.	The visibility may be narrow, but we can't help it.
	daitai (ni)	generally
	rakkasan	parachute
	gisei	sacrifice, casualty
e.	Rakkasan de oriru to, daitai ni, gisei ga ooi kamo shirenai.	If we go down with parachutes, the casualties may be generally great.
	ushiro	rear, behind, back
	dakara	informal equivalent of desu kara 'therefore'
f.	Teki no kuutei-butai ga ushiro ni kooka-suru kamo shirenai. Dakara ki o tsuke nakereba naranai.	Enemy airborne units may come down in the rear. Therefore we must be careful.

B. Dialogue.

Airborne Units.

1. A: Kuutei-butai wa rakkasan-butai desu ka.

   B: Daitai ni soo desu. Kuutei-butai wa kookuuki de kooka-chiiki ni itte, taitei rakkasan de kooka-shimasu.

2. A: Kuutei-butai wa, sore dewa, hiruma shika kooka dekimasen ka.

   B: Iie, chigaimasu. Yoru de mo kooka-shimasu. Kaette yoru no hoo ga ii desu.

3. A: Demo, chijoo ni takai ki ya numachi ga atte mo, wakaranai deshoo. Kurakute, shikai ga semai kara, abunai desu ne.

   B: Sore wa soo desu. Keredomo, mae ni chikei-chibutsu o shirabete okimasu kara, hayashi no naka ni oritari, numa ni oritari suru koto wa nai hazu desu.

4. A: Kiri ga aru toki de mo, kooka-shimasu ka.

   B: Hai, tobiorimasu. Gisei ga sukoshi demasu ga, shikata ga nai desu. Sensoo no toki niwa, hei no anzen bakari kangaeru koto wa dekimasen.

5. A: Sore wa soo desu nee.

   B: Sore ni, hikui kumo ga attari, kaze ga sukoshi fuite itari, kiri ga attari shite, tenkoo ga sukoshi warui to, kaette anzen desu yo.

6. A: Kuutei butai wa donna toki ni tsukaimasu ka.

   B: Teki no ushiro no hoo no, sakusen-joo taisetsu na tokoro o senryoo-shitai toki ni, tsukaimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Sore dewa, hei o kanari takusan gisei ni suru kamo shiremasen ne.

B: Soo desu. Dakara, rikujoo-butai to renraku ga dekinai to omou toki niwa, sonna sakusen wa shimasen.

Lesson 37

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: Are airborne units parachute troops?

   B: Generally (speaking), that's correct. Airborne units go to a drop zone by aircraft and usually descend by means of parachutes.

2. A: Can airborne units, then, descend only during day time?

   B: No, you're wrong. They descend even at night. On the contrary, night is better.

3. A: But I suppose they can't tell even if there are tall trees and swamps on the ground. It's dark and the visibility is limited, so it's dangerous, isn't it?

   B: You're right. But they investigate terrain features in advance, so there shouldn't be any occasion when they land in woods or swamps.

4. A: Do they descend even when there is fog?

   B: Yes, they jump (down). Some casualties result, but it can't be helped. You can't think only about the safety of men in time of war.

5. A: Isn't that true!

   B: Besides, it's rather safer if the weather is somewhat bad with low clouds, a little wind, or fog, you know.

6. A: When do they use airborne units?

   B: They use them when they want to capture places behind the enemy which are important from the standpoint of operations.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Then, they may sacrifice quite a few men?

B: That's right. So, when they believe they can't establish liaison with ground units, they don't plan such operations.

Lesson 37

D. Grammar Notes.

1. *hazu*

The word *hazu* is a noun meaning 'normal, logical, or moral expectation'. It is always preceded by a modifier and followed usually by some form of the copula *da* or *desu*. The modifiers of *hazu* are clauses which may end with the non-past or past form of verbs and I-adjectives, or with *na*, or *no*, or *datta*. The meaning of the phrase *hazu desu* is something like '--- is expected to, is supposed to, ought to, must, should'.

Examples:

Sumisu-san wa raishuu Nihon e *iku* *hazu* *desu*.

'Mr. Smith is expected (or supposed) to go to Japan next week.'

Buraun-san wa konshuu Nihon e *iku* *hazu* deshita ga --- .

'Mr. Brown was expected (or supposed) to go to Japan this week, but ---.'

Guriin-san wa sengetsu Nihon e *itta* *hazu* *desu*.

'Mr. Green is supposed to have gone to Japan last month.'

or

'Mr. Green must have gone to Japan last month.'

Takai jidoosha wa *ii* *hazu* *desu*.

'Expensive cars are supposed to be good.'

Ano jidoosha wa *ii* *hazu* *deshita* ga, --- .

'That car was supposed to be good but --- .'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Ano jidoosha wa yokatta hazu desu ga, --- .

'That car is supposed to have been good, but --.'

Ano jidoosha wa anzen na hazu desu ga, --- .

'That car is supposed to be safe, but --- .'

Ano jidoosha wa anzen na hazu deshita ga, -- .

'That car was supposed to be safe, but ---.'

Ano jidoosha wa anzen datta hazu desu ga, --- .

'That car is supposed to have been safe, but --.'

Ano kata wa sensei no hazu desu ga, --- .

'He is supposed to be a teacher, but --- .'

Ano kata wa sensei no hazu deshita ga, --- .

'He was supposed to be a teacher, but --- .'

Ano kata wa sensei datta hazu desu ga, --- .

'He is supposed to have been a teacher, but --.'

2. -joo 'from the standpoint of --- '.

Suffixed to certain nouns, -joo means 'from the standpoint of --- ', e.g.,

eisei-joo	'from the standpoint of health'
sakusen-joo	'from the standpoint of operations'
kankei-joo	'from the standpoint of relations'

Lesson 37

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

3. Stem of *-masu* form of a verb plus another verb.

In English, the idea of *space* or *position* (rather than *time*) forms in many cases a basis of expressions. English is rich in words indicating the position or location of a thing. They include, for example, such words as 'out, round, up, down, into, off', and they usually follow verbs as prepositions or adverbs as in the following examples: go out, walk around, draw up, jump down, go into, cut off.

These 'space' words are usually rendered into Japanese with verbs. That is, a phrase like 'jump down' is expressed in Japanese by properly compounding two verbs *tobu* 'jump' and *oriru* 'descend.' The two verbs are compounded by placing first the stem of the *-masu* form of the verb for the action which happens before the action of the other verb.

Since the action *tobu* 'jump' takes place before the action *oriru* 'descend', they are compounded as follows: tobi-oriru (or tobioriru) 'jump down'.

Examples:

kaku	'write'	and	*toru*	'take'	---	*kakitoru*	'jot down'
kiru	'cut'	and	*toru*	'take'	---	*kiritoru*	'cut off, cut away, cut down'
tobu	'jump'	and	*deru*	'leave'	---	*tobideru*	'jump out'
tobu	'jump'	and	*tatsu*	'stand'	---	*tobitatsu*	'jump up'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

4. bakari de naku or dake de naku 'not only'.

Bakari and dake both mean 'only' and naku is the -ku form of nai 'is not'. The phrase bakari de naku and dake de naku both mean 'not only', and they occur after the informal forms of the non-past and past and after nouns. When used after nouns, the particles o, ga and mo are usually omitted.

Examples:

Kono gakkoo ni wa otoko no sensei bakari de naku, onna no sensei mo imasu.

Kono gakkoo ni wa otoko no sensei dake de naku, onna no sensei mo imasu.

'There are not only male instructors but also female instructors in this school.'

Booshi bakari de naku, kaban mo kaimashita.

Booshi dake de naku, kaban mo kaimashita.

'I bought not only a hat but also a briefcase.'

Tanaka-san ni tegami o kaita bakari de naku, denwa mo kakemashita.

Tanaka-san ni tegami o kaita dake de naku, denwa mo kakemashita.

'Not only did I write a letter to Mr. Tanaka, but also I telephoned him.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kono jidoosha wa chiisai bakari de naku,
sukoshi furui desu.

Kono jidoosha wa chiisai dake de naku,
sukoshi furui desu.

'This car is not only small, but it's a little old.'

Kore wa kirei na bakari de naku, tsuyoi desu.

'This is not only pretty but strong.'

Lesson 37

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following sentences to the corresponding sentence meaning 'so-and-so is (or was) supposed (or expected) to do (or be) so-and-so':

a. Yamada-san wa ashita kimasu.

b. Tanaka-san wa komban kaerimasu.

c. Sumisu-san wa mada Nihon ni imasu.

d. Kodomo-tachi wa sonna tokoro e wa ikimasen.

e. Kyoo wa kyuujitsu da kara, jimusho ni wa dare mo imasen.

f. Kore wa taihen ii kara, takai desu.

g. Kuutei-butai wa chikei-chibutsu o mae ni shirabete oku kara, hayashi no naka ya numachi ni wa kooka-shimasen.

h. Yoru wa kurakute shikai ga semai kara, taihen kiken desu.

i. Koko wa akarui kara, anzen desu.

j. Ashita wa ame desu.

k. Kuutei-butai wa kooka-chiiki ni tsuite rikujoo-butai to renraku o shite okimashita.

l. Guriin-san wa ototoi Tookyoo e ikimashita.

m. Rikujoo-butai wa ano oka o kinoo senryoo-shimashita.

n. Teki no butai wa tsuyokatta desu.

o. Ano sakusen wa yokatta desu.

p. Kuutei-butai no senryoo-shita tokoro wa taihen taisetsu deshita.

q. Kono hashi wa kiken deshita.

r. Yamamoto-san wa byooki deshita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

2. Tell your friend that:

   a. Mr. Suzuki is expected to return tomorrow.

   b. Mr. Kawata is supposed to go to see a movie with you tonight.

   c. Mr. Tanabe is supposed to study about three hours tonight.

   d. it's supposed to rain today.

   e. the kitchen is supposed to be kept clean all the time.

   f. it's supposed to be windy today.

   g. this medicine is supposed to be good for him.

   h. Mr. Tanaka is supposed to have gone to Yokohama yesterday.

   i. Mr. Kojima is supposed to have been in trouble.

3. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences of each pair into a single sentence, using the phrase bakari de naku:

   a. (1) Shimbu o kaimashita.

      (2) Zasshi mo kaimashita.

   b. (1) Nihongo o shitte imasu.

      (2) Eigo mo shitte imasu.

   c. (1) Rikugun no gunjin ga imasu.

      (2) Kaigun no gunjin mo kuugun no gunjin mo imasu.

   d. (1) Oosaka e ikimashita.

      (2) Kyooto e mo ikimashita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. (1) Ano hito wa te ga arimasen.
(2) Ano hito wa ashi mo arimasen.

f. (1) Tanaka-san wa kekkon-shite imasu.
(2) Tanaka-san wa kodomo-san ga takusan arimasu.

g. (1) Kono uchi wa semai desu.
(2) Kono uchi wa kitanai desu.

h. (1) Ame ga futte imasu.
(2) Kaze ga fuite imasu.

i. (1) Nanni mo tabemasen.
(2) Nanni mo nomimasen.

j. (1) Koko wa taihen fuben desu.
(2) Koko wa kiken desu.

Lesson 38

A. Perception Drill.

1.	-dai	counter for the number of vehicles and machineries
	ichi-dai	1 vehicle
	ni-dai	2 vehicles
	san-dai	3 vehicles
	yon-dai	4 vehicles
	go-dai	5 vehicles
	roku-dai	6 vehicles
	nana-dai or shichi-dai	7 vehicles
	hachi-dai	8 vehicles
	kyuu-dai or ku-dai	9 vehicles
	juu-dai	10 vehicles
	nan-dai	how many vehicles?
	nan-dai mo	many vehicles
	nan-nin mo	many people
	nan-satsu mo	many volumes
	nan-do mo	many times
	nan-nichi mo	many days
a.	Sensha ga nan-dai mo arimasu.	There are many tanks.
b.	Nan-dai arimasu ka.	How many are there?
c.	Juushichi-dai arimasu.	There are 17.
	shuugoo	assembly
	shuugoo-suru	assemble, gather (v.i.)

Lesson 38

A. Perception Drill, continued.

d.	Sensha ga takusan shuugoo-shite imasu.	Many tanks are assembled.
2.	-ko	counter for the number of units
	ik-ko	1 unit
	ni-ko	2 units
	san-ko	3 units
	yon-ko	4 units
	go-ko	5 units
	rok-ko	6 units
	nana-ko or shichi-ko	7 units
	hak-ko	8 units
	kyuu-ko	9 units
	jik-ko or juk-ko	10 units
	nan-ko	how many units?
	nan-ko mo	many units
a.	Ik-ko chuutai ni wa sensha ga nan-dai arimasu ka.	How many tanks does a company have?
b.	Juushichi-dai arimasu.	It has 17.
3.	suru	informal form of shimasu 'make, change, or do' (v.t.)
a.	Kodomo o isha ni shimāshita.	I made my child a doctor.

Lesson 38

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Tanaka-tai-i o chuutai-choo ni shimashita.	They made Captain Tanaka a company commander.
c.	Kono tatemono wa gakkoo ni shimasu.	We'll change this building into a school.
4.	awasete	TE form of awaseru 'put together, combine' (v.t.)
a.	Chuutai o go-ko awasete, ik-ko daitai ni shimasu.	They put together 5 companies and make a battalion. or They make a battalion by putting together 5 companies. or They put together 5 companies to make a battalion.
	kikoo-shidan	armored division
	dokuritsu	independence
	dokuritsu-suru	become independent (v.i.)
	tatakau	fight (v.i.)
b.	Kikoo-shidan wa dokuritsu-shite, tatakaimasu.	An armored division fights independently. or An armored division fights being independent.
c.	Watakushi wa mainichi aruite, gakkoo ni ikimasu.	I go to school on foot everyday. or I walk to school everyday. or

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		I go to school by walking everyday.
	kyoodoo	cooperation
	kyoodoo-suru	cooperate (v.i.)
d.	Hoohei wa hohei to kyoodoo-shite, tatakaimasu.	Artillery cooperates with infantry and fights. or Artillery fights by cooperating with infantry.
5. a.	Tanaka-san wa Sumisu-san ni Nihongo o oshiemashita.	Mr. Tanaka taught Japanese to Mr. Smith. or Mr. Tanaka taught Mr. Smith Japanese.
b.	Tanaka-san wa Sumisu san ni Nihongo o oshiete agemashita.	Mr. Tanaka taught Japanese to Mr. Smith. (Lit: Mr. Tanaka rendered the service of teaching Japanese to Mr. Smith.)
	morau	receive (v.t.)
c.	Sumisu-san wa Tanaka-san ni Nihongo o oshiete moraimashita.	Mr. Smith had Japanese taught by Mr. Tanaka. or Mr. Smith had Mr. Tanaka teach Japanese. (Lit: Mr. Smith received the service of teaching Japanese from Mr. Tanaka.)
d.	Taroo wa otoo-san ni kutsu o katte moraimashita.	Taro had his father buy him shoes. or Taro had his shoes bought by his father.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	shien	support, assistance
	shien-suru	support, assit (v.t.)
e.	Kikoo-shidan wa hohei-shidan ni shien-shite morawanakute mo ii desu.	An armored division doesn't have to have an infantry division support it.
f.	Sensha wa donna toki ni hohei ni shien-shite moraimasu ka.	When do tanks have infantry support them?
	dooro	road
	heisoku	blockade
	heisoku-suru	blockade (v.t.)
	heisoku-butsu	blocking object
	dooro-heisoku-butsu	roadblock
	taisensha	antitank
	taisensha-hoo	antitank gun
	taisensha-jirai	antitank mine
	koogeki	attack
	koogeki-suru	attack (v.t.)
	tame ni	because of or for the purpose of
g.	Dooro-heisoku-butsu, taisensha-hoo, taisensha-jirai nado no tame ni teki o koogeki dekinai toki ni shien-shite moraimasu.	They have it support them when they can't attack the enemy because of roadblocks, antitank guns, antitank mines, and so on.
6.	totsugeki	assault, charge
	totsugeki-suru	assault, charge (v.i.)

Lesson 38

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	shien-shageki	support fire
a.	Sensha wa, hohei ga totsugeki-suru toki ni, shien-shageki o shimasu.	Tanks provide support fire when infantry assaults.
	tetsu	iron, steel
	tetsujoomoo	wire entanglement
b.	Sensha wa tetsujoomoo o hakai-shimasu.	Tanks destroy wire entanglements.
	engo	cover, protection
	engo-suru	cover, protect (v.t.)
c.	Sensha wa hohei o engo-shimasu.	Tanks cover infantry.
7.	nenryoo	fuel
a.	Sensha wa nenryoo ni nani o tsukaimasu ka.	What do tanks use for their fuel?
	gasorin	gasoline
b.	Gasorin o tsukaimasu.	They use gasoline.
	hoo	gun
	too	tower
	hootoo	turret
	denki	electricity or electric light
	chikara	power
	ugoku	move (v.i.)
	ugokasu	move (v.t.)

Lesson 38

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	c.	Hootoo wa denki no chikara de ugokimasu.	A turret moves by the electric power.
8.	a.	Asa hayaku okiru no wa karada ni ii desu. or Asa hayaku okiru koto wa karada ni ii desu.	It's good for the health to get up early in the morning. or Getting up early in the morning is good for the health.
	b.	Asa hayaku okiru koto wa dekimasen.	I can't get up early in the morning. (Lit: Getting up early in the morning is not possible for me.)
		hoodan	shell
		abura	oil, grease
		moeru	informal equivalent of moemasu 'burn' (v.i.)
		moyasu	burn (v.t.)
		ketten	shortcoming, weak point, defect
	c.	Teki no hoodan ga meichuu-suru to, gasorin ya abura ga moeru koto wa sensha no ketten desu.	It's a shortcoming of tanks that their gasoline and grease will burn when the enemy shells hit them. or The fact that the gasoline and grease will burn when the enemy shells hit them is a shortcoming of tanks.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	fukai	deep (I-adj.)
	asai	shallow (I-adj.)
d.	Fukai kawa no naka ni hairu koto ga dekinai koto mo ketten desu.	It's also a shortcoming that they can't get into a deep river.

Lesson 38

B. Dialogue.

Armored.

1. A: Koko ni sensha ga nan-dai mo shuugoo-shite imasu ga, nan-dai arimasu ka.

   B: Juushichi-dai shuugoo-shite imasu. Ik-ko chuutai desu ne.

2. A: Ik-ko chuutai ni juushichi-dai mo arimasu ka.

   B: Soo desu. Chuutai o go-ko awasete ik-ko daitai ni shimasu. Daitai ni wa sensha ga, hombu no o awasete, hachijuu kyuu-dai gurai arimasu. Soshite, kikoo-shidan ni wa daitai ga yon-ko arimasu.

3. A: Kikoo-shidan wa dokuritsu-shite tatakaimasu ka, hohei to kyoodoo-shite tatakaimasu ka.

   B: Kikoo-shidan ni wa jibun no kikoo-hohei-butai ga atte, sensha o shien-shimasu. Sore desu kara, hohei-shidan ni shien-shite morawanakute mo ii no desu.

4. A: Sensha wa hohei ga hitsuyoo desu ka.

   B: Soo desu. Dooro-heisoku-butsu, taisensha-hoo, taisensha-jirai nado no tame ni, teki o koogeki dekinai koto ga arimasu. Sonna toki ni wa, hohei no shien ga hitsuyoo desu.

5. A: Hohei ga totsugeki-suru toki ni wa, sensha wa shien-shageki o shimasu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Sono hoka, tetsujoomoo o hakai-shitari, hohei o engo-shitari suru koto mo arimasu.

6. A: Sensha no nenryoo wa gasorin desu ne.

   B: Soo desu. Keredomo, hootoo wa denki no chikara de ugokimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Sensha no ketten wa nan desu ka.

B: Omokute, fukai kawa ya numachi o tooru koto ga dekinai koto to; teki no hoodan ga meichuu-suru to, moeru koto to; shikai no semai koto desu.

8. A: Tetsu no sensha ga moemasu ka.

B: Gasorin ya abura ga moeru n desu.

9. A: Sore de wa, sensha no naka mo ammari anzen dewa arimasen ne.

B: Mochiron, anzen dewa arimasen.

Lesson 38

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: There are many tanks assembled here. How many are there?

   B: Seventeen. It's one company, isn't it?

2. A: Does one company have as many as 17 tanks?

   B: That's right. They put together 5 companies to make a battalion. A battalion has about 89 tanks including the ones that belong to the headquarters. And an armored division has 5 battalions.

3. A: Does an armored division fight independently or cooperating with infantry?

   B: An armored division has its own armored infantry units and they provide support for tanks. So it doesn't have to have an infantry division support it.

4. A: Is infantry necessary for tanks?

   B: It is. There are times when they cannot attack the enemy because of roadblocks, antitank guns, antitank mines, and the like. On such occasions, they need support from infantry.

5. A: When infantry assaults, tanks provide support fire, don't they?

   B: They do. Besides, there are also times when they destroy wire entanglements and cover infantry.

6. A: The fuel for tanks is gasoline, isn't it?

   B: That's right. But the turret moves by the power of electricity.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

7. A: What are the shortcomings of tanks?

B: They are that they are unable to pass through deep rivers and swamps because they are heavy, that they burn when the enemy shells hit them, and that their visibility is limited.

8. A: Do iron tanks burn?

B: The gasoline and grease burn.

9. A: Then, the inside of a tank isn't very safe either, is it?

B: Of course, it isn't.

Lesson 38

D. Grammar Notes.

1. *-dai*.

-Dai is a counter to count the number of vehicles and machineries. It is combined with the Chinese series of numerals, e.g.,

ichi-dai	'1 vehicle'	nana-dai *or* shichi-dai	'7 vehicles'
ni-dai	'2 vehicles'	hachi-dai	'8 vehicles'
san-dai	'3 vehicles'	kyuu-dai *or* ku-dai	'9 vehicles'
yon-dai	'4 vehicles'	juu-dai	'10 vehicles'
go-dai	'5 vehicles'	nan-dai	'how many vehicles?'
roku-dai	'6 vehicles'		

2. *-ko*.

-Ko is also a counter to count the number of units and things for which there are no other particular counters. It is also combined with the Chinese series of numerals, e.g.,

ik-ko	'1 unit'	nana-ko *or* shichi-ko	'7 units'
ni-ko	'2 units'	hak-ko	'8 units'
san-ko	'3 units'	kyuu-ko	'9 units'
yon-ko	'4 units'	jik-ko *or* juk-ko	'10 units'
go-ko	'5 units'	nan-ko	'how many units'
rok-ko	'6 units'		

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The number of military units is also counted by the counter -ko. Unlike other numbers, the number of military units often occurs directly in front of the noun that stands for the particular size of a unit in question, e.g.,

ik-ko chuutai	'1 company'
san-ko chuutai	'3 companies'
yon-ko daitai	'4 battalions'
san-ko rentai	'3 regiments'
ni-ko shidan	'2 divisions'

Compare the following:

ik-ko chuutai	'1 company'
dai-ichi chuutai	'first company'
ni-ko chuutai	'2 companies'
dai-ni chuutai	'second company'

3. ni suru 'make, change to'.

Occurring after the particle ni, the verb suru means 'make' or 'change to'.

Examples:

Kaneko-san wa musume-san o sensei ni shimashita.

'Mr. Kaneko made his daughter a teacher.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Gakkoo o byooin ni shimashita.

'They made the school a hospital.'

or

'They made a hospital out of the school.'

or

'They changed the school to a hospital.'

Sa, yasumi ni shimashoo.

'Let's take a break.'

Sa, tabako ni shimashoo.

'Let's have a smoke.'

Sa, chuushoku ni shimashoo.

'Let's have lunch.'

4. nan plus counter plus mo 'many --- '.

The question word nan plus a counter plus mo means 'many' of the thing indicated by the counter.

Examples:

nan-nin mo	'many people'
nan-dai mo	'many vehicles'
nan-do mo	'many times'
nan-nen mo	'many years'

Kono gakkoo ni wa onna no sensei ga nan-nin mo imasu.

'There are many female instructors in this school.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Sensha ga nan-dai mo shuugoo-shite imasu

'Many tanks are assembled.'

5. Adverbial use of TE form.

The TE form is often used adverbially. Occurring before the main clause, it often states why or how the action or state of the main clause takes place or is true. Examples of 'how':

Aruite kimashita.

'I walked.'
or
'I came on foot.'
or
'I came by walking.'

Tatte oshiemasu.

'I teach standing.'

Chuutai o go-ko awasete, ik-ko daitai ni shimasu.

'They make a battalion by putting 5 companies together.'

Mado o akete, nemasu.

'I sleep with the window open.'

Ammari takusan tabete, byooki ni narimashita.

'Since I ate too much, I got sick.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Ammari takakute, kau koto ga dekimasen.

'I can't buy it because it's too expensive.'

Ame de komarimashita.

'I was in trouble due to rain.'

6. TE form of verbs plus morau.

The TE form of a verb plus morau 'receive' means 'have something done by some' or 'have someone do something'. The person or agent by whom the action or service is performed is indicated by the particle ni.

Compare:

Tanaka-san ga shimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka did it.'

Tanaka-san ga shite kudasaimashita.

'Mr. Tanaka did it for me.'

Tanaka-san ni shite moraimashita.

'I had it done by Mr. Tanaka.'
or
'I had Mr. Tanaka do it.'

Isha ga kimashita.

'A doctor came.'

Isha ga kite kudasaimashita.

'A doctor came for me.'

Isha ni kite moraimashita.

'I had a doctor come.'

Yamada-san wa hon o kaimashita.
'Mr. Yamada bought a book.'
Yamada-san ga hon o katte kudasaimashita.
'Mr. Yamada bought a book for me.'
Yamada-san ni hon o katte moraimashita.
'I had a book bought by Mr. Yamada.'
or
'I had Mr. Yamada buy me a book.'

The verb itadakimasu is the humble equivalent of moraimasu. Therefore the TE form of a verb plus itadakimasu means 'have something done by someone' or 'have someone do something' in a humble honorific sense.

Examples:

Sensei ni shite itadakimashita.
'I had my teacher do it.'
or
'I had it done by my teacher.'

Tanaka-san ni oshiete itadakimashita.
'I had Mr. Tanaka teach it.'
or
'I had it taught by Mr. Tanaka.'

More examples:

Yamada-san ni oshiete moraitai desu.
'I want Mr. Yamada to teach it.'
or
'I want it taught by Mr. Yamada.'
or
'I would like to have Mr. Yamada teach me.'

Lesson 38

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Yoku benkyoo-*shite* *moraitai n desu*.

'I want you to study hard.'

Kaneko-san *ni* *shite* *moratte kudasai*.

'Please have Mr. Kaneko do it.'
or
'Please have it done by Mr. Kaneko.'

Anata *ni* wa nanni mo *shite* *morawanakute mo ii desu*.

'I don't have to have you do anything for me.'
or
'I don't have to have anything done by you.'

7. *no* and *koto*.

The nouns *no* and *koto* both sometimes mean 'act' or 'fact', but they are always preceded by a modifier. In general the use of *no* is more common in conversation except in a few fixed examples like -- *koto ga dekimasu*, -- *koto ga arimasu*. Actually *no* and *koto* are often used to form a noun clause.

Mainichi *undoo-suru* *no* wa karada ni ii desu.

'It's good for the health to do exercise everyday.'
or
'Doing exercise daily is good for the health.'

Sukoshi *chiisai* *no* ga ketten desu.

'The fact that it's a little small is its shortcoming.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Sore ga taisetsu na no wa shitte imasu ga, --.
'I know that it's important, but --.'

In all the above examples, no may be replaced by koto. It should, however, be noted that no and koto used in this way are not always interchangeable.

B. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'someone or something became so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'you made or changed someone or something to so-and-so.'

   a. Yamada-san wa junsa ni narimashita.

   b. Kyooshitsu ga jimushitsu ni narimashita.

   c. Tanaka-san ga tomodachi ni narimashita.

   d. Dooro ga tetsudoo ni narimashita.

   e. Jidoosha ga torakku ni narimashita.

   f. Seito ga sensei ni narimashita.

   g. Zubon ga mijikaku narimashita.

   h. Kawa ga fukaku narimashita.

   i. Jidoosha ga yasuku narimashita.

   j. Heya ga akaruku narimashita.

2. Given below are pairs of sentences. Making whatever changes are necessary, combine the two sentences of each pair into one logical sentence:

   a. (1) Byooki ni narimashita.

      (2) Hataraku koto ga dekimasen.

   b. (1) Yuki ga takusan furimashita.

      (2) Soto ga shiroku narimashita.

   c. (1) Yoru osoku nemashita.

      (2) Asa hayaku okiru koto ga dekinakatta n desu.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

d. (1) Okane ga nakatta n desu.

(2) Nanni mo kau koto ga dekinakatta n desu.

e. (1) Ofuro ga taihen atsukatta n desu.

(2) Hairu koto ga dekimasen deshita.

f. (1) Tanaka-san wa mainichi ni-jikan gurai hatarakimashita.

(2) Tanaka-san wa gakkoo e ikimashita.

g. (1) Chuutai o go-ko awasemashita.

(2) Ik-ko daitai ni shimashita.

h. (1) Tegami o kakimashita.

(2) Tazunemashita.

i. (1) Denwa o kakemashita.

(2) Shitsumon-shimashita.

j. (1) Hohei wa taisensha jirai o jokyo-shimasu.

(2) Hohei wa sensha o shien-shimasu.

3. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'someone did something' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'you had someone do something' or 'you had something done by someone:

a. Yamamoto-san ga sooji-shimashita.

b. Kanai ga motte kimashita.

c. Tomodachi ga gasorin o kaimashita.

d. Tanaka-san ga kodomo o tsurete ikimashita.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

e. Sensei ga tegami o kakimashita.

f. Yamada-san wa kinoo go-jikan oshiemashita.

g. Sugu junsa ga kimashita.

h. Seito ga soto ni demashita.

i. Yamanaka-san wa Nihongo de hanashimashita.

j. Chuutai-choo ga tetsudaimashita.

4. Answer each of the following questions:

a. Sensha wa nenryoo ni nani o tsukaimasu ka.

b. Kikoo-shidan wa dokuritsu-shite tatakau koto ga dekimasu ka.

c. Sensha no hootoo wa nan no chikara de ugokimasu ka.

d. Sensha wa, teki no hoodan ga meichuu-suru to, moemasu ka.

e. Kikoo-shidan ni wa hohei-butai ga arimasu ka.

f. Hohei wa tokidoki sensha o shien-shimasu ka.

g. Sensha wa donna toki ni teki o koogeki dekinai n desu ka.

h. Tetsujoomoo ga fusetsu-shite atte mo, sensha wa koogeki-suru koto ga dekimasu ka.

i. Sensha no ketten wa nan desu ka.

j. Sensha wa donna toki ni hohei no tame ni shien-shageki o shimasu ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

5. Tell your friend that:

a. you've seen that movie many times.

b. you want to have him come immediately.

c. you want to do this job by cooperating with him.

d. you have many shortcomings.

e. you don't know when America became independent.

Lesson 39

A. Perception Drill.

1.		kiku	inquire, ask or listen (v.t.)
		kikimasu	formal equivalent of kiku
		okiki suru	humble honorific equivalent of kiku
		okiki shitai	humble honorific equivalent of kikitai 'want to ask'
	a.	Okiki shitai koto ga arimasu.	I have something I want to ask you about. or I want to ask you about something.
	b.	Ohanashi shitai koto ga arimasu.	I want to tell you something.
		chizu	map
	c.	Chizu ni tsuite otazune shitai koto ga arimasu.	I want to ask you about a map.
2.	a.	(Ano kata wa) Nihonjin desu.	He's a Japanese.
	b.	Nihonjin nara, shitte iru hazu desu.	If he's a Japanese, he's supposed to know.
	c.	Amerikajin nara wakaranai deshoo.	I suppose Americans don't understand it. (Lit: If they are Americans, they probably don't understand it.)
	d.	Chizu no koto nara nan demo shitte imasu.	I know all about maps. (Lit: If it is something about a map, I know anything.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		kuwashii	is familiar with, detailed (I-adj.)
	e.	Nihon no koto nara kuwashii desu.	If it's about Japan I'm familiar. or I'm familiar with things about Japan.
3.		enryo	restraint, reserve
		goenryo	exalted equivalent of enryo
		enryo naku	without reserve, frankly, unreservedly
		goenryo naku	exalted equivalent of enryo naku
	a.	Enryo naku tabete kudasai.	Please eat without reserve.
	b.	Goenryo naku otazune kudasai.	Please ask me without reservation.
4.		taitei	usual
		taitei no	usual, most
		tookoo	equal height
		sen	line
		tookoosen	contour line
	a.	Taitei no chizu ni wa tookoosen ga kaite arimasu.	On most maps, contour lines are drawn.
		tochi	land
		kifuku	relief, undulation, rolling

A. Perception Drill, continued.

b.	Tookoosen o miru to, tochi no kifuku ga wakarimasu.	When you look at the contour lines, you can tell the topographic relief.
c.	Tookoosen o mitara, tochi no kifuku ga wakarimasu.	When you look at the contour lines, you can tell the topographic relief.
d.	Tookoosen o mireba, tochi no kifuku ga wakarimasu.	If you look at the contour lines, you can tell the topographic relief.
	moshi	if
	kootei	relief, hypsography
e.	Moshi tookoosen ga kaite nakereba, kootei wa wakarimasen.	If the contour lines are not drawn, you can't tell the relief.
	tani	valley, trough
	dangai	cliff
	areba	-ba form of aru
f.	Tookoosen ga kaite areba, tani ya dangai no aru tokoro ga wakarimasu.	If the contour lines are drawn, you can tell the places where valleys and cliffs exist.
5.	katachi	shape, form
a.	Tookoosen o miru to yama no katachi ga wakarimasu ka.	Can you tell the shape of a mountain if you see the contour lines?
	kankaku	interval
b.	Kono chizu dewa tookoosen no kankaku wa nijuu-meetoru desu.	The contour interval for this map is 20 meters.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	dookutsu	cavern
	tonneru	tunnel
	airo	defile
c.	Kuwashii chizu nara, dookutsu ya, tonneru ya, airo nado no aru tokoro ga kaite arimasu.	Detailed maps indicate the places where such things as caverns, tunnels, and defiles are.
	nutte	TE form of nuru 'paint' (v.t.)
d.	Kawa wa aoku nutte arimasu.	Rivers are painted blue.
	heiya	plain, field
e.	Heiya wa midori ni nutte arimasu.	Plains are painted green.
6.	kakoo or kawaguchi	river mouth
	shi	city
	machi	town
	mura	village
a.	Kakoo no chikaku ni wa, shi ya, machi ya, mura ga arimasu.	There are cities, towns, and villages near the river mouth.
	jooryuu	head waters, upper stream, upper reaches
	karyuu	lower reaches, downstream
b.	Taitei karyuu ga joryuu yori fukai desu.	Usually the downstream is deeper than the upper stream.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		kantan	simple (copula noun)
		kagan or kawagishi	river bank
		hakkiri	clearly, distinctly
	c.	Kantan na chizu de wa kagan ni nani ga aru ka hakkiri wakarimasen.	You can't tell clearly what's along the river bank from a simple map.
7.		anoo	well, say, if you please, let me see
	a.	Anoo chotto ima isogashii desu ga.	Well, I'm a little busy now.
	b.	Anoo shitsumon ga arimasu.	Say I have a question.
8.		yoo	likeness (copula noun)
	a.	Are wa Tanaka-san desu.	That's Mr. Tanaka.
	b.	Tanaka-san no yoo desu.	That's like Mr. Tanaka. or He looks like Mr. Tanaka.
	c.	Tanaka-san no yoo na hito desu.	He's a person like Mr. Tanaka.
	d.	Tanaka-san no yoo ni arukimasu.	He walks like Mr. Tanaka.

8

Lesson 39

B. Dialogue.

Map Reading.

1. A: Sumimasen ga, kyoo wa chizu ni tsuite okiki shitai koto ga arimasu.

B: Soo desu ka. Chizu no koto nara sukoshi shitte imasu kara, doozoo goenryo naku nan demo otazune kudasai.

2. A: Chizu o mite, tochi no kifuku ga wakarimasu ka.

B: Ee, wakarimasu. Taitei no chizu ni wa tookoosen to iu sen ga kaite atte, sono sen o mireba tochi no kootei ga wakaru hazu desu.

3. A: Moshi tookoosen ga kaite nakereba, wakaranai n desu ne.

B: Soo desu.

4. A: Tani ya dangai no aru tokoro wa doo shite wakarimasu ka.

B: Tookoosen de dekita katachi o mireba wakaru shi, mata aru tokoro dewa tookoosen to tookoosen no aida ga hiroku mietari semaku mietari shimasu kara sore de wakarimasu.

5. A: Dookutsu no aru tokoro wa doo shite wakarimasu ka.

B: Ooki na dookutsu ga areba, soko ni dookutsu to kaite arimasu.

6. A: Kawa wa taitei aoku nutte arimasu ne.

B: Soo desu. Soshite, kakoo no chikaku wa taitei heiya ni natte iru node, soko wa midori ni nutte arimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Chizu ni yotte wa, jooryuu to karyuu ga hakkiri wakaranai no ga aru yoo desu ga --- .

B: Soo desu ka. Anoo, kawa no haba dake mita no de wa, dochira ga jooryuu de, dochira ga karyuu ka wakaranai yoo na toki ni wa, tookoosen o mireba wakarimasu.

8. A: Aru kantan na chizu de wa, kagan ni nani ga aru ka yoku wakarimasen ne.

B: Demo, kagan ni wa, taitei shi ya, machi ya, mura nado ga arimasu ne.

9. A: Kuwashii chizu nara, tonneru ya airo nado no aru tokoro mo hakkiri wakaru deshoo ne.

B: Soo desu.

10. A: Anoo, mada okiki shitai koto ga aru n desu ga, moo ohiru desu kara, uchi e kaeranakereba narimasen. Doo mo iroiro arigatoo gozaimashita.

B: Doo itashimashite.

Lesson 39

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: I'm sorry, but I want to ask you (questions) about maps today.

   B: Is that so! I know a little about maps, so please feel free to ask me anything. (Lit: If it's something about a map, I know a little about it; so please ask anything without reserve.)

2. A: Can you tell the land relief by looking at a map?

   B: Yes, I can. On most maps, lines called contour lines are drawn. And, if you see them, you should be able to tell the land relief.

3. A: If contour lines are not drawn, you can't tell, can you?

   B: That's right.

4. A: How can you tell the places where valleys (troughs) and cliffs exist?

   B: You can tell if you look at the shape formed by the contour lines. And again at some places, the spaces between the contour lines appear wide or narrow; so by those you can tell.

5. A: How can you tell the places where caverns exist?

   B: If there are large caverns, the word 'cavern' is written at those places.

6. A: Rivers are usually painted blue, aren't they?

   B: That's right. And the area near a river mouth is usually a plain, so it's painted green.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Depending on the map, it seems that we can't tell clearly the upper streams from the downstreams, but --- .

B: Is that so. Well, on such occasions as when you can't tell which is the upper stream and which is the downstream by looking only at the width of a river, you can tell if you look at the contour lines.

8. A: You can't tell on a map of topography only what's along the river bank, can you?

B: But usually there are cities, towns and villages along the river bank, aren't there?

9. A: If it's a detailed map, we can probably tell also the places where tunnels and defiles are, can't we?

B: That's right.

10. A: Well, I still have things to ask of you, but it's already noon, so I must go home. Thank you very much for everything.

B: You're welcome.

D. Grammar Notes.

1. o plus the stem of the -masu form plus shimasu.

The honorific particle o plus the stem of the -masu form of a verb plus shimasu is a humble honorific equivalent of the verb. This construction exists only for certain verbs used in reference primarily to the speaker. That is, this construction occurs either when the speaker humbly does something for persons of equal or superior social standing or when the speaker humbly asks a favor of such persons:

Compare:

Sensei ni hanashimashita.
'I told the teacher.'
Sensei ni ohanashi shimashita.
'I told the teacher.'

Kikimashita.
'I asked.'
Okiki shimashita.
'I asked.'

Tetsudaimashoo ka.
'Shall I help you?'
Otetsudai shimashoo ka.
'Shall I help you?'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tazunetai koto ga arimasu.

'I want to ask you about something.'

Otazune shitai koto ga arimasu.

'I want to ask you about something.'

2. -ba form and nara 'if'.

The conditional -tara form has already been introduced, e.g.,

Samukattara, mado o shimete mo ii desu.

'If it's cold (now), you may close the window.'

Nihongo de hanashitara, wakaru deshoo.

'If you speak in Japanese, they'll probably understand.'

To express the meaning 'if', there is another form called -ba form.

The -ba form of I-adjectives is formed by replacing the final -i of the informal non-past form (or basic form) with -kereba, e.g.,

Basic form		-Ba form	
akai	'it's white'	akakereba	'if it's white'
aoi	'it's blue'	aokereba	'if it's blue'
samui	'it's cold'	samukereba	'if it's cold'
muzukashii	'it's difficult'	muzukashikereba	'if it's difficult'

Lesson 39

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

The -ba form of verbs is formed by replacing the final -u of the informal non-past form (or basic form) with -eba, e.g.,

Basic form		-Ba form	
kaku	'write'	kakeba	'if I write'
hanasu	'speak'	hanaseba	'if I speak'
shinu	'die'	shineba	'if I die'
iu	'say'	ieba	'if ' say'
nomu	'drink'	nomeba	'If I drink'
toru	'take'	toreba	'if I take'
oyogu	'swim'	oyogeba	'if I swim'
tobu	'fly'	tobeba	'if I fly'
*tatsu	'stand'	tateba	'if I stand'
miru	'look at'	mireba	'if I look at'
taberu	'eat'	tabereba	'if I eat'
kuru	'come'	kureba	'if I come'
suru	'do'	sureba	'if I do'

*Note that the consonant ts changes to t.

Examples:

Samukereba, mado o shimete mo ii desu.

'If it's cold, you may close the window.'

Lesson 39

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Nihongo de hanaseba, wakaru deshoo.

'If you speak in Japanese, they'll probably understand.'

The difference between the -tara form and the -ba form is a matter of doubt. The -tara form indicates some doubt as to whether something will or will not happen, but the -ba form makes a hypothetical condition.

Compare:

Yasukattara kaimasu.

Yasuketeba kaimasu.

'If it's cheap, I'll buy.'

Ame ga furanakattara ikimasu.

Ame ga furanakereba ikimasu.

'If it doesn't rain, I'll go.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Byooki nara, hataraku koto ga dekinai deshoo.

'If he is sick, he probably won't be able to work.'

Ano kata wa Nihonjin desu.

'He is a Japanese.'

Nihonjin nara, Nihongo ga dekiru deshoo.

'If he is a Japanese, he can probably speak Japanese.'

Kore wa Yamada-san no desu.

'This is Mr. Yamada's.

Yamada-san no nara, koko ni oite kudasai.

'If it's Mr. Yamada's, please put it here.'

Kore wa kantan desu.

'This is simple.'

Kantan nara, watakushi mo naraimashoo.

'If it's simple, I think I'll learn it, too.'

The word moshi 'if' often occurs at the beginning of the clause whose ending expresses the meaning 'if' as in the following examples:

Moshi tookoosen ga kaite nakereba, tochi no kootei wa hakkiri wakarimasen.

'If contour lines are not drawn, you can't tell clearly the relief.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Moshi tookoosen ga kaite nakattara, tochi no kootei wa hakkiri wakarimasen.

'If contour lines are not drawn, you can't tell clearly the relief.'

Moshi tookoosen ga kaite nai to, tochi no kootei wa hakkiri wakarimasen.

'If contour lines are not drawn, you can't tell clearly the relief.'

Thus, the word moshi occurs in the same position as the English word 'if', but in Japanese the meaning of 'if' is carried by the form at the end of the clause. Moshi is, therefore, used at the beginning of an 'if' clause to emphasize the meaning 'if' and to signal the listener to expect an 'if' clause, especially when the clause is long.

Note that the subject of an 'if' clause, if mentioned, is always indicated by the particle ga.

3. yoo 'likeness'.

The use of yoo has already been introduced. The word yoo is a copula noun, and it is always preceded by a modifier and followed by some form of the copula (da, desu, deshita, datta, nara, na) or by ni.

a. When used in the construction 'a modifier plus yoo plus the copula', yoo means 'like', 'appears', 'seems', or 'looks':

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Kawata-san wa kodomo no yoo desu.

'Mr. Kawata is like a child.'

Kore wa sukoshi furui yoo desu ga, --- .

'This looks a little old.'

Taroo wa nete iru yoo desu.

'Taro seems to be sleeping.'

b. When used in the construction 'a modifier plus yoo plus ni', yoo means 'like', 'as if', 'so that' or 'as'. The English equivalent of yoo in this pattern depends on the kind of the modifier and on the verb that follows ni.

Examples:

Sumisu-san wa Nihonjin no yoo ni hanashimasu.

'Mr. Smith speaks like a Japanese.'

Sensei no yoo ni yomu no wa muzukashii desu.

'It's difficult to read like a teacher.'

Nihonjin ga hanasu yoo ni hanasanakute wa narimasen.

'You must talk as (like) the Japanese do.'

Watakushi no iu yoo ni shite kudasai.

'Please do as I tell you.'

Hayaku kaeru yoo ni itte kudasai.

'Tell him to come home early.'
(Lit: Tell him so that he'll come home early.)

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Yoku wakaru yoo ni oshiete kudasai.

'Teach them so that they'll understand well.'

Maiasa hayaku okiru yoo ni shimasu.

'I'll try to get up early every morning.'

Ammari takusan tabenai yoo ni shite kudasai.

'Please try not to eat too much.'

Lesson 39

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Change each of the following -tara sentences to the corresponding -ba sentence:
   - a. Yasukattara, kau kamo shiremasen.
   - b. Yokattara, sukoshi wa katte mo ii desu.
   - c. Atsukattara, mado o shimenakute mo ii desu.
   - d. Jidoosha ga nakattara, fuben desu.
   - e. Tomodachi ga kitara, benkyoo dekimasen.
   - f. Hon o yondara, sugu wakaru hazu desu.
   - g. Kaitara, wakaru deshoo.
   - h. Sensei dattara, dekiru to omoimasu.
   - i. Watakushi dattara, sonna koto wa shimasen.
   - j. Hitsuyoo dattara, katte mo ii desu ga.

2. Give complete HAI and IIE answers for each of the following questions:
   - a. Okane ga nakute mo, kau koto ga dekimasu ka.
   - b. Tookoosen ga nakute mo, tochi no kifuku ga wakarimasu ka.
   - c. Chizu ga nakute mo, Nikkoo e iku koto ga dekimasu ka.
   - d. Sensei ga inakute mo Nihongo o narau koto ga dekimasu ka.
   - e. Sore wa Nihon e ikanakute mo, miru koto ga dekimasu ka.
   - f. Jibiki ga nakereba, benkyoo dekimasen ka.
   - g. Nihon e ikanakereba, Nihongo o narau koto ga dekimasen ka.
   - h. Tookoosen ga kaite nakereba, tani ya dangai no aru tokoro ga wakarimasen ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

3. Change each of the following sentences meaning 'something or someone is so-and-so' to the corresponding sentence meaning 'something or someone is like so-and-so' or 'something or someone seems to be so-and-so':

   a. Koko wa dangai desu.

   b. Kochira ga jooryuu desu.

   c. Kore wa airo desu.

   d. Ano kata wa onna desu.

   e. Are wa Yamada-san desu.

4. Express the following in Japanese:

   a. Mr. Brown speaks Japanese like a Japanese.

   b. You must do as I tell you.

   c. You needn't do as I do.

   d. Please tell him to come here immediately.

   e. Please tell him to close all the windows.

   f. Please try to study three hours a night.

   g. Please try to do exercise everyday.

5. Complete each of the following sentences by adding an appropriate conclusion:

   a. Me ga nakereba, ------ .

   b. Mimi ga nakereba, ------ .

   c. Ashi ga nakereba, ------ .

   d. Gakkoo e ikanakereba, ------ .

   e. Nanni mo tabenakereba, ------ .

   f. Ammari takakereba, ------ .

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

g. Ame ga fureba, ------ .

h. Okane ga takusan areba, ------ .

i. Byooki nara, ------ .

j. Kirei nara, ------ .

6. Answer each of the following questions:

a. Tookoosen o mireba, nani ga wakarimasu ka.

b. Chizu o mite, tani ya dangai no aru tokoro ga wakarimasu ka.

c. Kawa no jooryuu to karyuu de wa taitei dotchi ga fukai desu ka.

d. Kakoo ni taitei donna mono ga arimasu ka.

e. Shi to machi to mura de wa dore ga ichi-ban ookii to omoimasu ka.

f. Chizu de tonneru ya airo no aru tokoro ga hakkiri wakaru to omoimasu ka.

g. Tookoosen to tookoosen no kankaku wa minna onaji desu ka.

Lesson 40

A. Perception Drill.

1.	kubochi	depression (topographic)
	keba	hachure
	tsukete	TE form of tsukeru 'attach' (v.t.)
	kakimasu	write, draw (v.t.)
	arawashimasu	formal equivalent of arawasu 'express, show' (v.t.)
	kakiarawashimasu	formal equivalent of kakiarawasu 'show or express in writing' (v.t.)
a.	Kubochi wa, tookasen ni keba o tsukete, kakiarawashimasu ka.	Do they show a depression by placing hachure lines on the contour lines? (Lit: Do they show a depression by attaching hachure lines to the contour lines?)
	iremasu	formal equivalent of ireru 'put in, insert' (v.t.)
	kaki-iremasu	write in, enter in writing, record (v.t.)
b.	Hai, soo shite, kaki-iremasu.	Yes, thus they enter in writing.
2.	fukai	deep (I-adj.)
	fukasa	depth
	tsuite	TE form of tsuku 'become attached' (v.i.)

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	tsuite imasu	is attached, is on (state of being)
	tsukete	TE form of tsukeru 'attach' (v.t.)
	tsukete arimasu	is (left) attached, is (left) on (state of being
a.	Aru chizu ni wa kawa no fukasa ga tsuite imasu ga, --- .	The depth of a river is (indicated) on some maps, but --- .
	ate	trust, worth
	ate ni naru	is reliable, trustworthy
b.	Ate ni narimasen.	It's unreliable.
c.	Naze ate ni narimasen ka.	Why is it unreliable?
	mizu	water
	nagaremasu	formal equivalent of nagareru 'flow' (v.i.)
	nagare	water-course, flow (of water)
	kawarimasu	formal equivalent of kawaru 'change' (v.i.)
d.	Mizu no nagare ga kawarimasu kara, kawa no fukasa mo kawarimasu.	The flow of water changes, so the depth of a river changes; too.
3.	hen	part, vicinity, area, neighborhood
	kifuku-chi	undulating terrain, rolling hills

A. Perception Drill, continued.

a.	Kono hen ni wa kifuku-chi ga arimasu.	This part has an undulating terrain.
	nadaraka	gentle (copula noun)
	tsuzuite	TE form of tsuzuku 'continue' (v.i.)
	tsuzuite imasu	continue or extend or stretch out one after another (state of being)
b.	Nadaraka na kifuku-chi ga tsuzuite imasu.	Gentle rolling hills stretch out (one after another).
4.	taira	level, flat (copula noun)
	noochi	farm land
a.	Kono hen wa taira na noochi desu.	This area is a level farm land.
	ta	paddy field, rice field
	hatake	dry field (where vegetables are raised)
b.	Koko ni wa ta ya hatake nado ga arimasu.	Here are paddy fields, dry fields, and the like.
	mannaka	middle, center
	hyakushoo	farmer
	hyakushoo-suru	farm (v.i.)
c.	Ta no mannaka ni hyakushoo no ie ga arimasu.	There is a farmer's house in the middle of a rice field.
5.	chikai	near, close (I-adj.)

Lesson 40

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		chikaku	vicinity, neighborhood (noun)
		kusa	grass
		kusachi	meadow, grassland
	a.	Kawa no chikaku wa kusachi desu.	The area near the river is a meadow.
	b.	Kusachi wa aokute, kirei desu.	The meadow is green and it's beautiful.
6.		hoogaku	direction
	a.	Chizu o mite, hoogaku wa doo shite wakarimasu ka.	How can you tell the direction by looking at a map?
		kita	north
		higashi	east
	b.	Chizu wa ue no hoo ga kita de, migi no hoo ga higashi desu.	The top of a map is the north and it's right side is the east.
		minami	south
		nishi	west
	c.	Shita no hoo ga minami de, hidari no hoo ga nishi desu.	The bottom side is the south, and the left side is the west.
7.		sore wa soo to	by the way
	a.	Sore wa soo to, kono akai sen wa nan desu ka.	By the way, what are these red lines?
		futoi	fat, thick, big, broad (I-adj.)

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	hosoi	small, fine, thin, slender (I-adj.)
	uramichi	byway
	komichi	path
b.	Futoi no wa ooki na dooro de, hosoi no wa uramichi ya komichi desu.	The big ones are big roads and the fine ones are byways and paths.
	magatte	TE form of magaru 'become bent, become curved' (v.i.)
	mageru	bend (v.t.)
	magatte imasu	formal equivalent of magatte iru 'is bent, is curved' (state of being)
c.	Kono michi wa taihen magatte imasu.	This road is very much curved.
8.	shirushi or kigoo	sign, mark, symbol
a.	Kono shirushi wa nan desu ka.	What's this sign?
	tooge	mountain pass
b.	Tooge no shirushi desu.	It's a sign for mountain pass.
9.	jama	hindrance, obstruction, inconvenience, bother
	ojama	humble honorific equivalent of jama
	jama ni naru	is in one's way, get in the way of (v.i.)

Lesson 40

A. Perception Drill, continued.

jama o suru or jama-suru	hamper, interfere with, interrupt, disturb, bother (v.t.)
a. Ojama-shimashita.	I'm afraid I've bothered you. or Excuse me for having interrupted you.
b. Doo itashimashite.	Not at all.

Lesson 40

B. Dialogue.

Map Reading, continued.

1. A: Kesa wa taihen ojama-shimashita.

B: Iie, doo itashimashite.

2. A: Sumimasen ga, moo sukoshi oshiete kudasai. Hoogaku wa doo shite wakarimasu ka.

B: Chizu de wa ue no hoo ga kita desu. Desu kara, shita no hoo ga minami de, migi no hoo ga higashi de, hidari no hoo ga nishi desu.

3. A: Midori no tokoro wa.

B: Midori wa taira na tokoro de, ta ya hatake ga arimasu. Kawa no chikaku no kusachi mo midori desu. Kono chizu o goran-nasai. Kore wa kuwashii chizu de, mannaka no hoo ga noochi de, hyakushoo no ie ga kuroku kaki-irete arimasu.

4. A: Kono hen wa tookoosen ga kanari magatte ite, tookoosen to tookoosen no aida ga taihen hiroi desu ne. Donna chikei deshoo ka.

B: Soko wa nadaraka na kifuku-chi ga tsuzuite iru tokoro desu.

5. A: Akai sen ni wa futoi no to hosoi no ga arimasu ga, nan desu ka.

B: Futoi no wa ookii dooro de, hosoi no wa uramichi, komichi nado desu.

6. A: Tooge nado wa chizu de wakarimasu ka.

B: Aru chizu ni wa tooge no shirushi ga tsuite imasu ga, aru chizu ni wa tsuite imasen. Shirushi no nai chizu ni wa tooge to kaite arimasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Kawa no fukai tokoro ya asai tokoro ga chizu de wakarimasu ka.

B: Aru chizu ni wa, kaite arimasu ga taitei no chizu ni wa kaite arimasen. Mizu no nagare ga kawaru kara, fukasa ga itsumo kawaru no desu. Desu kara, fukasa ga kaite atte mo, amari ate ni narimasen.

8. A: Sore wa soo to, kubochi wa tookoosen de arawasu koto ga dekimasu ka.

B: Hai, tookoosen ni keba o tsukete, arawashimasu. Keba wa naka no hoo ni tsukete arimasu.

9. A: Kyoo wa iroiro to arigatoo gozaimashita.

B: Doo itashimashite. Mata kite kudasai.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: I'm afraid I've bothered you much this morning.

   B: No, not at all.

2. A: I'm sorry, but please teach me a little more. How can you tell directions?

   B: In maps, the top side is the north. So the bottom side is the south, the right side is the east, and the left side is the west.

3. A: What about places in green?

   B: Green is (or indicates) a level place where there are paddy fields and dry fields. Meadows near a river are also (indicated) in green. Please look at this map. This is a detailed map, and the middle is a farm land where farm houses are entered in black.

4. A: As for this part, the contour lines are quite curved, and the intervals betweem them are very wide, aren't they? I wonder what sort of terrain this is?

   B: That place is where gentle rolling hills stretch (one after another).

5. A: There are big red lines and fine red lines. What are they?

   B: The big ones are wide roads and the fine ones are byways, paths and the like.

6. A: Can you tell such things as a mountain pass in a map?

   B: The sign for a mountain pass is on some maps, but it's not on other maps. The maps without the sign have the word 'mountain pass' written on them.

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Can you tell deep and shallow places of a river in a map?

   B: They are written on some maps, but not on most maps. The depth always changes because the water course (flow of a river) changes. So even if the depth is written, you can't rely on it very much.

8. A: By the way, can a depression be shown by contour lines?

   B: Yes, it is shown by placing hachure lines on contour lines. Hachure lines are placed toward the inside.

9. A: Thank you for everything today.

   B: You're welcome. Please come again.

Lesson 40

D. Grammar Notes.

1. Nouns derived from the stem of the -masu form.

The stem of the -masu form of many verbs becomes an independent noun. The meaning of such nouns is normally related to the meaning of the verbs from which it was derived.

Examples:

Masu form		Noun	
nagaremasu	'flow'	nagare	'flow of water, water-course'
kaerimasu	'return, go home, come home'	kaeri	'return, the way back'
yasumimasu	'rest'	yasumi	'rest, a day off, holiday'
tsukaimasu	'use, employ'	tsukai	'errand'
hatarakimasu	'work'	hataraki	'work'
hanashimasu	'speak, talk'	hanashi	'speech, story'
oshiemasu	'teach'	oshie	'teaching'
wakarimasu	'understand'	wakari	'comprehension'
ikimasu	'go'	iki	'going'
ugokimasu	'move'	ugoki	'movement, motion'
shirabemasu	'investigate'	shirabe	'investigation'
kangaemasu	'think over'	kangae	'idea'
osoremasu	'become scared, is fearful'	osore	'fear'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

umaremasu	'is born'	umare	'birth, lineage'
hajimemasu	'begin, start'	hajime	'beginning'
owarimasu	'end'	owari	'end'
omoimasu	'think'	omoi	'thought'
nemasu	'sleep'	ne	'sleep'
sorimasu	'shave'	sori	'razor'

2. ta 'rice paddy' and hatake 'dry field'.

Ta means 'rice paddy, rice field' and it is a arable land where rice-plants are planted by filling the land with water. But hatake means 'dry field' and it is also an arable land where vegetables and grains are raised without filling the field with water.

Lesson 40

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Tell your friend that each of the following is not reliable:

   a. this map

   b. those farmers

   c. this newspaper

   d. this machine gun

   e. this airplane

   f. your children

   g. your watch

   h. that doctor

   i. that soldier

   j. this car

2. Answer in full each of the following questions:

   a. Taitei chizu no ue no hoo wa kita desu ka, higashi desu ka.

   b. Kita no hoo to minami no hoo de wa dotchi ga atatakai desu ka.

   c. Asa higashi to nishi de wa dotchi no hoo ga akarui desu ka.

   d. Ooki na machi de wa, chizu o minakereba, hoogaku no wakaranai koto ga arimasu ka.

   e. Nihon de wa ta ni mizu o iremasu ka.

   f. Hyakushoo wa taitei donna tokoro ni sunde imasu ka.

   g. Yoru uramichi o hitori de aruku no wa abunai desu ka.

   h. Keba wa nan no tame ni tsukemasu ka.

   i. Tooge wa donna tokoro ni arimasu ka.

   j. Kifuku-chi o arawasu tookoosen wa magatte imasu ka.

E. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

3. Express each of the following in Japanese:

   a. There are many new houses in this neighborhood.

   b. They say that they are going to build a new road in that meadow.

   c. The depth of this river is probably about 3 meters.

   d. This path probably bends to the right at the foot of that mountain.

   e. This road leads to Tokyo.

   f. That airplane flew away in the direction of the east.

   g. There is a large forest to the west.

   h. There is a lot of water in that depression.

   i. That's a good idea.

   j. Excuse me for having bothered you a lot yesterday.

Lesson 41

A. Perception Drill.

1.	sekkoo	patrol
	bunkentai	detachment
a.	Sekkoo wa bunkentai desu.	A patrol is a detachment.
	joohoo	information or intelligence
	atsumemasu	formal equivalent of atsumeru 'collect, gather' (v.t.)
b.	Sekkoo wa teki no joohoo o atsumemasu.	A patrol collects information about the enemy.
c.	Sekkoo wa sono hoka ni nani o shimasu ka.	What else does a patrol do?
	tatoeba	for example
	jooran	harassing
	jooran-suru	harass (v.t.)
d.	Iroiro na koto o shimasu. Tatoeba, jooran, hakai nado o shimasu.	It does various things. For example, it does harassing, demolition, and so forth.
e.	Sekkoo wa sentoo mo shimasu ka.	Does a patrol also fight?
	kesshite shimasen	never do
f.	Kesshite sentoo wa shimasen.	It never fights.
g.	Sentoo wa kesshite sekkoo no mokuteki ja arimasen.	Fighting is never an objective of a patrol.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

2.	sentoo-sekkoo	combat patrol
a.	Sentoo-sekkoo wa chotto chigaimasu.	A combat patrol is a little different.
	hontai	main body
b.	Sentoo-sekkoo wa hontai kara dokuritsu-shite, sentoo-suru koto ga arimasu.	A combat patrol sometimes fights independently of its main body.
3.	okurimasu	formal equivalent of okuru 'send, dispatch' (v.t.)
	okuri-dasu	send out, dispatch (v.t.)
a.	Sekkoo o okuri-dasu toki ni wa, shikikan wa nani o shimasu ka.	What does a commanding officer do when he sends out a patrol?
	mazu	first of all
	jin-in	personnel
	erabimasu	formal equivalent of erabu 'select, elect, choose' (v.t.)
b.	Mazu jin-in o erabimasu.	First of all he selects personnel.
	yooso	element
	shuyooso	essential element
	joohoo-shuyooso	essential elements of information (EEI)
c.	Sore kara, joohoo-shuyooso no setsumei o shimasu.	Then, he explains the EEI.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

	tada	only, simply, merely
	dake	only
d.	Tada sore dake desu ka.	Is that all? (Lit: Simply, it's only that.)
e.	Soobi-hin no tenken mo shimasu.	He also inspects equipment.
	jishaku	compass
	keitai	portable, carrying
	keitai-suru	carry with (v.t.)
	keitai-musenki	portable radio
	tokubetsu	special, particular (copula noun)
f.	Tatoeba, jishaku ya, keitai-musenki no yoo na tokubetsu na soobi-hin no tenken o shimasu.	For example, he inspects special equipment like a compass and a portable radio.
4.	sekkoo-choo	patrol leader
a.	Sekkoo-choo wa nani o shimasu ka.	What does a patrol leader do?
	kotoba	word
	aikotoba	password
b.	Aikotoba o oshiemasu.	He teaches the passwords.
	shuppatsu	departure
	shuppatsu-suru	depart (v.i.)
	kichaku	return, coming back

Lesson 41

A. Perception Drill, continued.

		kichaku-suru	return, come back (v.i.)
		michi-jun	route, course
		kimemasu	formal equivalent of kimeru 'decide, determine' (v.t.)
	c.	Shuppatsu no jikan ya, kichaku no jikan ya, michi-jun mo kimemasu.	He also decides the time of departure, the time of return and the route.
		mayotta	informal past form of mayou 'get lost, stray, lose one's way (v.i.)
		michi ni mayotta toki	when one gets lost
		shuugoo-chiten	rallying point
	d.	Michi ni mayotta toki no shuugoo-chiten mo kimemasu.	He also decides on the rallying points for the occasion when one gets lost.
5.		koe	voice
	a.	Sekkoo ni dete iru toki ni wa, ooki na koe de hanashite wa ikemasen.	One mustn't talk loud when he is out on patrol.
		tabako o nomu	smoke
	b.	Tabako o nonde mo ikemasen.	He mustn't smoke, either.
		tatete	TE form of tateru 'raise, stand' (v.t.)
		oto	sound, noise
		oto o tateru	make a noise

Lesson 41

A. Perception Drill, continued.

c.	Oto o tatete mo ikemasen.	He mustn't make a noise, either.
	dekiru dake	as much as possible
d.	Dekiru dake oto o tatenai yoo ni shinakereba narimasen.	He must try not to make a noise as much as possible.
	shizuka	silence, quiet (copula noun)
	shizuka ni	quietly, gently
	koodoo	action, motion, movement
	koodoo-suru	move, act (v.i.)
e.	Shizuka ni koodoo-shinakereba narimasen.	He must move quietly.
6.	shorui	document
a.	Shorui o motte, sekkoo ni deru no wa warui desu.	It's bad to go out on patrol with documents.
	horyo	prisoner of war(PW)
b.	Horyo ni nattara, teki ga shorui o totte shimaimau kara desu.	Because when one becomes a PW, the enemy will take the documents away.

Lesson 41

B. Dialogue.

Patrol.

1. A: Sekkoo wa nan desu ka.

   B: Sekkoo wa bunkentai de, teki no joohoo o atsumetari, keikai no nimmu ni tsuitari shimasu.

2. A: Sekkoo wa, sono hoka ni wa, nani mo shimasen ka.

   B: Hoka no nimmu de dete iku koto mo arimasu. Tatoeba, jooran, hakai nado desu. Keredomo, sentoo wa kesshite sono mokuteki ja arimasen.

3. A: Sore dewa, sentoo-sekkoo wa.

   B: Sore wa chotto chigai masu. Sentoo-sekkoo wa hontai kara wa dokuritsushite sentoo-suru koto ga arimasu. Keredomo taitei keikai ga sono nimmu desu. Tada hitsuyoo na toki dake sentoo o yarimasu.

4. A: Sekkoo o okuri-dasu toki ni wa, shikikan wa nani o shimasu ka.

   B: Mazu, jin-in o erande, sore kara joohoo-shuyooso no setsumei o shimasu.

5. A: Tada sore dake desu ka.

   B: Sore kara, shuppatsu no mae ni, soobi-hin no tenken mo shimasu.

6. A: Nani ka tokubetsu na soobi-hin ga irimasu ka.

   B: Jishaku, keitai-musenki, chizu nado ga irimasu. Mata horyo ni natta toki ni, shorui nado motte iru to, warui desu kara, sonna mono o motte iru ka doo ka mo shirabemasu.

B. Dialogue, continued.

7. A: Sore dewa, sekkoo-choo wa nani o shimasu ka.

B: Sekkoo-choo wa aikotoba o oshietari, shuppatsu no jikan ya kichaku no jikan, michi ni mayotta toki no shuugoo-chiten o kimetari shimasu. Michi-jun mo kimemasu.

8. A: Sekkoo ni dete iru toki ni wa, ookii koe de hanashitari, tabako o nondari suru koto wa kesshite dekimasen ne.

B: Soo desu. Teki mo keikai-shite imasu kara, oto o tateru to, wakaru deshoo. Sore desu kara, dekiru dake, oto o tatenai yoo ni shimasu.

9. A: Shizuka ni koodoo suru no desu ne.

B: Soo desu.

Lesson 41

C. English Equivalents, Dialogue.

1. A: What is a patrol?

   B: A patrol is a detachment, and it collects enemy information and it's also assigned to security duties.

2. A: Doesn't a patrol do anything else?

   B: There are times when it goes out on other missions, too. For instance, harassing, demolition and so forth. But fighting is never its objective.

3. A: Then, how about a combat patrol?

   B: That's a little different. A combat patrol at times engages in combat independently of the main body. However usually the security is its mission. It fights only when it's necessary.

4. A: What does the commanding officer do when he sends out a patrol?

   B: First of all, he selects personnel and then explains the EEI.

5. A: Is that all?

   B: Then, before departure he also inspects equipment.

6. A: Does it need any special equipment?

   B: It needs such things as a compass, a portable radio, and a map. And it's bad if a member of a patrol has any documents when he becomes a PW, so he (commanding officer) checks if it (patrol) has such things as that.

A. Perception Drill, continued.

7. A: Then what does a patrol leader do?

   B: A patrol leader teaches passwords and decides on the time of departure, the time of return and the rallying points for the occasion when one gets lost. He also decides the route.

8. A: One can never talk loudly or smoke when he is out for patrol, can he?

   B: No. The enemy is also guarding (on alert), so he'll probably find out if one makes a noise. So one tries not to make noise as much as possible.

9. A: One moves quietly, doesn't he?

   B: That's right.

Lesson 41

D. Grammar Notes.

1. *kesshite* plus the negative 'never'.

The word *kesshite* 'decidedly' is always followed by the negative 'not', and thus *kesshite* plus the negative means 'never' or 'decidely not'.

Kesshite plus the non-past negative of verbs means 'someone *never does* so-and-so' or 'someone *will never do* so-and-so', e.g.,

Watakushi wa sonna tokoro e *kesshite ikimasen*.
or
Watakushi wa *kesshite* sonna tokoro e *ikimasen*.

'I never go to a place like that.'
or
'I'll never go to a place like that.'

Tanaka-san wa sonna koto wa *kesshite* *shimasen*.
or
Tanaka-san wa *kesshite* sonna koto wa *shimasen*.

'Mr. Tanaka never does a thing like that.'
or
'Mr. Tanaka will never do a thing like that.'

Kesshite plus the past negative of verbs means 'someone *or something never did* so-and-so (at a certain time in the past)', e.g.,

Watakushi wa, Nihon ni ita toki ni, *kesshite* sonna tokoro e *ikimasen deshita*.

'I never went to a place like that when I was in Japan.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

Tanaka-san wa Amerika ni kite ita toki ni kesshite sonna koto wa shimasen deshita.

'Mr. Tanaka never did a thing like that when he was in America.'

The pattern to express the meaning 'someone has never had the experience of doing so-and-so (till the present time)' will be introduced later on.

Kesshite plus the non-past negative of the copula desu and I-adjectives means 'someone or something is never so-and-so', e.g.,

Ii mono wa kesshite yasuku wa arimasen.

'Good things are never cheap.'

Yamada-san wa kesshite sonna hito ja arimasen.

'Mr. Yamada never is a person like that.'

Koko wa kesshite anzen ja arimasen.

'This place is never safe.'

Kesshite plus the past negative of the copula and I-adjectives means 'something or someone was never so-and-so (at a certain time in the past)', e.g.,

Kesshite yasuku wa arimasen deshita.

'It was never cheap (then) .'

Kesshite sonna hito ja arimasen deshita.

'He never was a person like that.'

D. Grammar Notes, continued.

2. _tada_ ---- _dake_ 'only'.

Both _tada_ and _dake_ mean 'only'. Yet they both may occur in the same sentence. However, _tada_ is normally followed by an expression containing _dake_ or its equivalent. Thus, _tada_ is used to emphasize the idea 'only' or 'simply'.

Examples:

Tada Yamada-san _dake_ irasshaimashita.

'Only Mr. Yamada came.'

Kono kyooshitsu ni wa seito ga _tada_ go-mei _shika imasen_.

'There are only 5 students in this classroom.'

Tada kore _dake_ desu.

'This is all.'

E. Exercises and Conversation.

1. Give a complete IIE answer for each of the following questions, using the word kesshite:

   a. Tabako o nomimasu ka.

   b. Sekkoo ni dete iru toki ni, ooki na oto o tatemasu ka.

   c. Aikotoba o shirazu ni, sekkoo ni demasu ka.

   d. Sentoo wa sekkoo no mokuteki desu ka.

   e. Shorui o motte, sekkoo ni demasu ka.

   f. Warui koto o shimasu ka.

   g. Soo desu ka.

   h. Furui desu ka.

   i. Sonna koto o itta n desu ka.

   j. Horyo ni naritai desu ka.

2. Answer each of the following questions in full:

   a. Sekkoo wa bunkentai desu ka.

   b. Teki no joohoo o atsumeru no wa sekkoo no nimmu no hitotsu desu ka.

   c. Sentoo mo sekkoo no mokutei desu ka.

   d. Sentoo-sekkoo mo kesshite sentoo o shimasen ka.

   e. Sekkoo wa taisetsu na shorui o motte sekkoo ni demasu ka.

   f. Dare ga joohoo-shuyooso no setsumei o shimasu ka.

   g. Sekkoo wa donna soobi-hin o motte, sekkoo ni demasu ka.

   h. Sekkoo-cho wa shuppatsu no mae ni donna koto o kimete okimasu ka.

C. Exercises and Conversation, continued.

i. Sekkoo wa michi ni mayotta toki ni wa doo shimasu ka.

j. Sekkoo wa naze ookii oto o tatenai yoo ni shimasu ka.

3. Express the following in Japanese:

a. One of the missions of a patrol is to harass the enemy rear.

b. The main body sent out a combat patrol.

c. He was a prisoner of war.

d. The patrol leader doesn't select the personnel.

e. You must study quietly.

f. If you get lost, call (phone) me.

g. Where is our rallying point?

h. You mustn't talk too loud.

i. Do you need a special map?

j. Please walk quietly without making noise.